LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BENJAMIN L. D’OOGE

This public domain grammar was brought to digital life by:

Textkit – Greek and Latin Learning tools

Find more grammars at http://www.textkit.com
PREFACE

To make the course preparatory to Caesar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.
The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.
Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Caesar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE
## CONTENTS

**Lesson**
To the Student—By way of Introduction ......................................... 1-4

**Part I. The Pronunciation of Latin**

Alphabet, Sounds of the Letters, Syllables, Quantity, Accent,
How to Read Latin ................................................................. 5-11

**Part II. Words and Forms**

I-VI. First Principles—Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number, Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc.—Dialogue ................................... 12-24

VII-VIII. First or A-Declension—Gender, Agreement of Adjectives, Word Order ................................................................. 25-30


XI. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ........................................... 36-37

XII. Nouns in -ius and -ium—Germania ........................................... 38-39

XIII. Second Declension (continued)—Nouns in -er and -ir—Italia—Dialogue ................................................................. 39-41

XIV. Possessive Adjective Pronouns .................................................. 42-43

XV. Ablative denoting With—Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner—The Romans Prepare for War ........................................... 44-46

XVI. The Nine Irregular Adjectives .................................................. 46-47

XVII. The Demonstrative is, ea, id—Dialogue ........................................... 48-50

XVIII. Conjunction—Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum—Dialogue ................................................................. 51-53

XIX. Present Active Indicative of amō and moneō ........................................... 54-56

XX. Imperfect Active Indicative of amō and moneō—Meaning of the Imperfect—Niobe and her Children ........................................... 56-57

XXI. Future Active Indicative of amō and moneō—Niobe and her Children (concluded) ........................................... 58-59

XXII. Review of Verbs—The Dative with Adjectives—Cornelia and her Jewels ................................................................. 59-61
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXIII. Present Active Indicative of <em>regō</em> and <em>audiō</em> — Cornelia and her Jewels (Concluded)</td>
<td>61–63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV. Imperfect Active Indicative of <em>regō</em> and <em>audiō</em> — The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs</td>
<td>63–65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV. Future Active Indicative of <em>regō</em> and <em>audiō</em></td>
<td>65–66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVI. Verbs in -iō — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of <em>capiō</em> — The Imperative</td>
<td>66–68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVII. Passive Voice — Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of <em>amō</em> and <em>moneō</em> — Perseus and Andromeda</td>
<td>68–72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of <em>regō</em> and <em>audiō</em> — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td>72–73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of -iō Verbs — Present Passive Infinitive and Imperative</td>
<td>73–75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX. Synopses in the Four Conjugations — The Ablative denoting From — Place from Which, Separation, Personal Agent</td>
<td>75–78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <em>sum</em> — Dialogue</td>
<td>79–81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXII. Perfect Active Indicative of the Four Regular Conjugations — Meanings of the Perfect — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td>81–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII. Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active Indicative — Perfect Active Infinitive</td>
<td>84–85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV. Review of the Active Voice — Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)</td>
<td>86–87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV. Passive Perfects of the Indicative — Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitive</td>
<td>88–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI. Review of Principal Parts — Prepositions, Yes-or-No Questions</td>
<td>90–93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII. Conjugation of <em>possuam</em> — The Infinitive used as in English — Accusative Subject of an Infinitive — The Faithless Tarpeia</td>
<td>93–96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII. The Relative Pronoun and the Interrogative Pronoun — Agreement of the Relative — The Faithless Tarpeia (Concluded)</td>
<td>97–101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX–XLI. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems</td>
<td>101–106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLII. Review Lesson — Terror Cimbricus</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIll. Third Declension — I-Stems</td>
<td>108–110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XLIV. Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension — Gender in the Third Declension — The First Bridge over the Rhine</td>
<td>111-112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV. Adjectives of the Third Declension — The Romans Invade the Enemy's Country</td>
<td>113-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI. The Fourth or Ú-Decension</td>
<td>116-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVII. Expressions of Place — Place to Which, Place from Which, Place at or in Which, the Locative — Declension of domus — Daedalus and Icarus</td>
<td>117-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII. The Fifth or Í-Decension — Ablative of Time — Daedalus and Icarus (Continued)</td>
<td>121-123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX. Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns — Daedalus and Icarus (Concluded)</td>
<td>123-126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Intensive Pronoun ipse and the Demonstrative idem — How Horatius Held the Bridge</td>
<td>126-127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. The Demonstratives hic, iste, ille — A German Chieftain Addresses his Followers — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Continued)</td>
<td>128-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. The Indefinite Pronouns — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Concluded)</td>
<td>130-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIII. Regular Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>133-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIV. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives — Ablative with Comparatives</td>
<td>135-136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Continued) — Declension of plús</td>
<td>137-138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Concluded) — Ablative of the Measure of Difference</td>
<td>138-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs</td>
<td>140-142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII. Numerals — Partitive Genitive</td>
<td>142-144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX. Numerals (Continued) — Accusative of Extent — Cæsar in Gaul</td>
<td>144-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. Deponent Verbs — Prepositions with the Accusative</td>
<td>146-147</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXI. The Subjunctive Mood — Inflection of the Present — Indicative and Subjunctive Compared</td>
<td>148-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII. The Subjunctive of Purpose</td>
<td>151-153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIII. Inflection of the Imperfect Subjunctive — Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>153-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIV. Inflection of the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — Substantive Clauses of Purpose</td>
<td>156-159</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CONTENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXV. <strong>Subjunctive of possum — Verbs of Fearing</strong></td>
<td>160-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVI. <strong>The Participles — Tenses and Declension</strong></td>
<td>161-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVII. <strong>The Irregular Verbs volō, nōlō, mālō — Ablative Absolute</strong></td>
<td>164-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVIII. <strong>The Irregular Verb fiō — Subjunctive of Result</strong></td>
<td>167-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIX. <strong>Subjunctive of Characteristic — Predicate Accusative</strong></td>
<td>169-171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX. <strong>Constructions with cum — Ablative of Specification</strong></td>
<td>171-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXI. <strong>Vocabulary Review — Gerund and Gerundive — Predicate Genitive</strong></td>
<td>173-177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXII. <strong>The Irregular Verb eō — Indirect Statements</strong></td>
<td>177-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIII. <strong>Vocabulary Review — The Irregular Verb ferō — Dative with Compounds</strong></td>
<td>181-183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIV. <strong>Vocabulary Review — Subjunctive in Indirect Questions</strong></td>
<td>183-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXV. <strong>Vocabulary Review — Dative of Purpose or End for Which</strong></td>
<td>185-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVI. <strong>Vocabulary Review — Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description</strong></td>
<td>186-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVII. <strong>Review of Agreement — Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative</strong></td>
<td>189-190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVIII. <strong>Review of the Ablative</strong></td>
<td>191-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIX. <strong>Review of the Syntax of Verbs</strong></td>
<td>192-193</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**READING MATTER**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Suggestions</td>
<td>194-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Labors of Hercules</td>
<td>196-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Cornelius Lentulus: The Story of a Roman Boy</td>
<td>204-225</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES**

| Appendix I. Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Numerals, etc. | 226-260 |
| Appendix II. Rules of Syntax | 261-264 |
| Appendix III. Reviews | 265-282 |
| Special Vocabularies | 283-298 |
| Latin-English Vocabulary | 299-331 |
| English-Latin Vocabulary | 332-343 |

INDEX | 344-348 |
LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

What is Latin? If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,¹ and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

The Spread of Latin. For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome’s power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four

¹ Pronounce *La’shētēm.*
hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks. In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks—poets, artists, orators, and philosophers—flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World. After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is
more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

**Latin and English.** Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French—which, you remember, is descended from Latin—and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

**Why study Latin?** The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study.
Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

**Review Questions.** Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome’s power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?
PART I

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no w and no j.

2. The vowels, as in English, are a, e, i, o, u, y. The other letters are consonants.

3. I is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called I consonant.

Thus in Iū-li-us the first i is a consonant, the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS¹

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

Vowels²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a as in father</td>
<td>häc, stäs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å like the first a in aha', never as in hat</td>
<td>ä'-mät, cä'-näs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as in they</td>
<td>tä'-lä, mä'-tä</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>é as in met</td>
<td>tē'-nēt, mēr'-cēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i as in machine</td>
<td>sēr'-ti, prä'-tī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

² Long vowels are marked --, short ones -.
VOWELS

ɪ as in bit
ő as in holy
ő as in wholly, never as in hot
ʊ as in rude, or as oo in boot
ũ as in full, or as oo in foot

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of a, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of quantity but also of quality.

6. In diphthongs (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

DIPHTHONGS

ae as ai in aisle
au as ou in out
ei as ei in eight
eu as ɛ'ʊ (a short e followed by a short u in one syllable)
oe like oi in toil
ui like ʊɪ (a short u followed by a short i in one syllable. Cf. English we)

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. Consonants are pronounced as in English, except that

CONSONANTS

c is always like ʧ in cat, never as in cent
g is always like ɡ in get, never as in gem
i consonant is always like ʃ in yes
n before c, qu, or ɡ is like ng in sing (compare the sound of n in anchor)
qu, gu, and sometimes ʂ before a vowel have the sound of qw, gw, and sw.
Here u has the value of consonant v and is not counted a vowel
s is like ʃ in sea, never as in case
t is always like ʈ in native, never as in nation
SYLLABLES

CONSONANTS

\( \text{-v} \) is like \( w \) in *wine*, never as in *vine*
\( \text{x} \) has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*)
and is like *x* in *extract*, not as in *exact*
\( \text{bs} \) is like *ps* and *bt* like *pt*
\( \text{ch, ph, and th} \) are like *c, p, t*

**Latin Examples**

\( \text{vi'-num}, \text{ vir} \)
\( \text{ex'-trah}, \text{ ex-act'-tus} \)
\( \text{urb}, \text{ ob-tir'-ne-0} \)
\( \text{pul'-cher}, \text{ Phoe'-be}, \text{ the'-a'-trum} \)

*a*. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*. Examples, *mit'-to*, *Ap'-pi'-us*, *bcl'-lum*.

SYLLABLES

8. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus *aes-ta'-te* has three syllables, *au-di'-en'-dus* has four.

*a*. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English *inside* with Latin *in-si'-de*.

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus *a-ma'-bi-lis*, *me-mo'-ri'-a*, *in-te'-re'-a*, *a'-besh*, *pe-re'-git*.

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

\( a \). A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*. Thus *pu'-blti'-us*, *a'-gri*.

**Exception.** Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*. Thus *ab'-la'-o*, *ab-rum'-po*, *il'-le*, *fer'-rum*.

\( b \). In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.\(^2\) Thus *ma-g'-nus*, *e-ges'-tas*, *vic-tio'-ri'-a*, *hos'-pes*, *an'-nus*, *su'-bac'-tus*.

3. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pen-ult*; the one before the penult, the *an'-te-penult*.

---

\(^1\) In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as *inter-e-a*, *ab-est*, *sub-actus*, *per-egit*, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.

\(^2\) The combination *tct* is divided *nt* as *finc-tus*, *sanc-tus*. 
10. **EXERCISE**

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

Vádē ād fórnicām, Ō pígēr, ēt consídērā víás ējūs ēt dīscē sāpīén-
tiām, quae cūm nōn hābēat dúcem nēc praccēptōrēm nēc prīncipēm,
pārāt ēn aestātē cībūm sībī ēt cóngrēgāt ēn mēssē quōd cómēdāt.

[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]

**QUANTITY**

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. **Quantity of Vowels.** Vowels are either long (\(\sim\)) or short (\(\sim\)). In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or \(h\); as pō-ē'-ta, trā'-hō.
2. A vowel is short before \(nt\) and \(nd\), before final \(m\) or \(n\), and, except in words of one syllable, before final \(l\) or \(r\). Thus a'-mānte, a-mān'-dus, a-mā'-bām, a-mā'-bāt, a'-ni-māl, a'-mōr.
3. A vowel is long before \(nf\), \(ns\), \(nx\), and \(nd\). Thus în'-fe-rō, re'-gēns, sān'-xī, sānc'-tus.
4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. **A syllable is short,**

   a. If it ends in a short vowel; as a'-mō, pī'-grī.

**Note.** In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word mō-mō'-rī-ām contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.
2. A syllable is long,

a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as cū'-rō, poe'-nae, aes-tā'-te.

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, as cor'-pus, mag'-nus.

Note. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in ter'-ra, in'-ter, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like saxum the first syllable is long because x has the value of two consonants (cs or gs).

3. In determining quantity h is not counted a consonant.

Note. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say cū'-rō as it does cū'-rō, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare mōl'-lis and mō'-lis, ā-mis'-sī and ā-mi'-sī.

ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as mēn'-sa, Cae'-sar.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus mo-nē'-mus, re'-gi-tur, a-gri'-co-la, a-man'-dus.

Note. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the syllable and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. § 13. 2, Note.)

16. Certain little words called enclitics,¹ which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are -que, and; -ve, or; and -ne, the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus populus'que, dea'que, rēgna'Ve, audit'ne.

¹ Enclitic means leaning back, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.
HOW TO READ LATIN

17. To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. § 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

18. Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [HIGHER]!^1

The shades of night were falling fast,
As through an Alpine village passed
A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and ice,
A banner with the strange device,
Excelsior!

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,
And like a silver clarion rung
The accents of that unknown tongue,
Excelsior!

In happy homes he saw the light
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,
And from his lips escaped a groan,
Excelsior!

"Try not the Pass!" the old man said;
"Dark lowers the tempest overhead,

Cadēbant noctis umbrae, dum
Ībat per vicum Alpicum
Gelū nivequ(e) adolēscēns,
Vēxillum cum signō ferēns,
Excelsior!

Frōns trīstis, micat oculus
Velut ē vāginā gladius;
Sonantque similēs tubae
Accentūs lingu(æ) incognitae,
Excelsior!

In domibus videt clārās
Focōrum lūcēs calidās;
Relūcet glaciēs ācris,
Et rumpit gemītūs labrīs,
Excelsior!

Dīcit senex, "Nē trānseās!
Suprā nigrēscit tempestās;

^1 Translation by C. W. Goodchild in Praeco Latinus, October, 1898.
PART II
WORDS AND FORMS

LESSON I
FIRST PRINCIPLES

19. Subject and Predicate. 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

Galba is a farmer
Galba est agricola

The sailor fights
Nauta pugnat

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Subject} & : \\
& \begin{cases}
\text{Galba} \\
\text{Galba} \\
\text{The sailor} \\
\text{Nauta}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Predicate} & : \\
& \begin{cases}
\text{is a farmer} \\
\text{est agricola} \\
\text{fights} \\
\text{pugnat}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a noun or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (\textit{pro}, "instead of," and \textit{noun}), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, \textit{Galba is a farmer;} \textit{he is a sturdy fellow.}

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.
The roaring torrent is deep and wide!"
And loud that clarion voice replied,
   Excelsior!

At break of day, as heavenward
The pious monks of Saint Bernard
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,
A voice cried through the startled air,
   Excelsior!

A traveler, by the faithful hound,
Half-buried in the snow was found,
Still grasping in his hand of ice
That banner with the strange device,
   Excelsior!

There in the twilight cold and gray,
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,
And from the sky, serene and far,
A voice fell, like a falling star,
   Excelsior!

Lātus et altus est torrēns."
Clāra vēnit vōx respondēns,
   Excelsior!

Iam lūcēscēbat, et frātres
Sāncī Bernardī vigilēs
Ōrābant precēs solitās,
Cum vōx clāmāvit per aurās,
   Excelsior!

Sēmi-sepultus viātor
Can(e) ā fidō reperitūr,
Comprēndēns pugnō gelidō
Illud vēxillumcum signō,
   Excelsior!

Iacet corpus examinum
Sed lūce frīgidā pulchrum;
Et caelō procūl exiēns
Cadit vōx, ut stella cadēns,
   Excelsior!
20. The Object. In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The doer of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the subject. That to which something is done is the direct object of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The boy</td>
<td>hit the ball</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(verb) (direct object)

\(a\). A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a transitive verb. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called intransitive, as, *I walk, he comes*.

21. The Copula. The verb *to be* in its different forms — *are, is, was*, etc. — does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the copula, that is, the *joiner or link*.

22. In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas:

1. America est patria mea
   \(\text{America is fatherland my}\)

2. Agricola filiam amat
   \((\text{The}) \text{farmer (his) daughter loves}\)

3. Filia est Iulia
   \((\text{His) daughter is Julia}\)

4. Iulia et agricola sunt in insulâ
   \(\text{Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island}\)

5. Iulia aquam portat
   \(\text{Julia water carries}\)

6. Rosam in comis habet
   \((\text{A}) \text{rose in (her) hair (she) has}\)

7. Iulia est puella pulchra
   \(\text{Julia is (a) girl pretty}\)

8. Domina filiam pulchram habet
   \((\text{The}) \text{ lady (a) daughter beautiful has}\)

\(a\). The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *Latin has no article the or a*; thus *agricola* may mean *the farmer, a farmer*, or simply *farmer*. Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I, you, he, she*, etc., and the possessive pronouns, *my, your, his, her*, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.
LESSON II

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

23. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are; was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer’s; woman, women.* This is called inflection. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its declension, that of a verb its conjugation.

24. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Naut-a pugnat</th>
<th>The sailor fights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Naut-ae pugnant</td>
<td>The sailors fight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25. Rule. *Nouns that end in *-a* in the singular end in *-ae* in the plural.*

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

*agri’cola, farmer (agriculture)*
*agricola*  
*water (aquarium)*
aqua  
*cause, reason*
causa  
*do’mina, lady of the house, mistress (dominate)*
do’mina  
*filia, daughter (filial)*
filia  
*fortu’na, fortune*
fortuna  
*fuga, flight (fugitive)*
fuga  
*iniu’ria, wrong, injury*
inu’ria  
*luna, moon (lunar)*
luuna  
*nauta, sailor (nautical)*
nauta  
*puel’la, girl*
puel’la  
*silva, forest (silvan)*
silva  
*terra, land (terrace)*
terra

27. Compare again the sentences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nauta pugna-t</th>
<th>The sailor fights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nautae pugna-nt</td>
<td>The sailors fight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the first sentence the verb *pugna-t* is in the third person singular, in the second sentence *pugna-nt* is in the third person plural.

1 The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as *causa, cause*, no comparison is needed.
28. **Rule**: Agreement of Verb. *A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.*

29. **Rule**: In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called **personal endings**.

30. Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns he, she, it, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb’s subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus **nauta pugnat** is translated the sailor fights, not the sailor he fights.

- ama-t **he (she, it)** loves, is loving, does love (amity, amiable)
- labôra-t **““** labors, is laboring, does labor
- nûntia-t ¹ **““** announces, is announcing, does announce
- porta-t **““** carries, is carrying, does carry (porter)
- pugna-t **““** fights, is fighting, does fight (pugnacious)

31. **Exercises**

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.


¹ The u in nûntiô is long by exception. (Cf. § 12.2.)
LESSON III

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

32. Declension of Nouns. We learned above (§§ 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence The lady her daughter loves might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

| Domina filiam amat          | The lady loves her daughter |
| Filiam domina amat         |                              |
| Amat filiam domina         |                              |
| Domina amat filiam         |                              |
| Filia dominam amat         | The daughter loves the lady   |
| Dominam filia amat         |                              |
| Amat dominam filia         |                              |
| Filia amat dominam         |                              |

a. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in -a and the object in -am. The form of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§ 23), this change of ending is called declension, and each different ending produces what is called a case. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases, — nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, who? whose? whom?
33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ENGLISH CASES</strong></th>
<th><strong>LATIN CASES</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Declension of who?</strong></td>
<td><strong>Name of case and use</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in -a, observe that

a. The nominative plural ends in -ae.
b. The genitive singular ends in -ae and the genitive plural in -ārum.
c. The accusative singular ends in -am and the accusative plural in -ās.
d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

34. **EXERCISE**

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1. Silva, silvās, silvam.
2. Fugam, fugae, fuga.
3. Terrārum, terrae, terrās.
4. Aquās, causam, lunās.
5. Filiae, fortūnae, lunae.
6. Iniūriās, agricolārum, aquārum.
7. Iniūriārum, agricolae, puellās.
8. Nautam, agricolās, nautās.
LESSON IV

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

35. We learned from the table (§ 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

Filia agricolae nautam amat, the farmer’s daughter (or the daughter of the farmer) loves the sailor

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. Rule. Nominative Subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?

37. Rule. Accusative Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?

38. Rule. Genitive of the Possessor. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?

DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT
39. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.


For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona’s daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers’ daughters do labor. 4. The farmer’s daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls’ flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors’ wrongs. 7. The farmer’s daughter labors. 8. Diana’s arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

40. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diāna? 4. Quis silvam amat?
2. Cuius filia est Diāna? 5. Quis sagittās portat?

LESSON V

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

41. The Dative Case. In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as from, with, by, to, for, in, at.¹

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which

¹ Words like to, for, by, from, in, etc., which define the relationship between words, are called prepositions.
English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the dative.

42. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the dative singular ends in -ae and the dative plural in -is.

Note. Observe that the genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural all have the same ending, -ae; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: fuga, causa, fortuna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.

43. The Dative Relation. The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions to, towards, for.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as She went to town, He ran towards the horse, Columbus sailed for America. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as motion through space is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that to or towards which a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that for which something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions — a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

44. The Indirect Object. Examine the sentence

Nauta fugam nuntiat, the sailor announces the flight

Here the verb, nuntiat, governs the direct object, fugam, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons to whom the sailor announces the flight, as, The sailor announces the flight to the farmers, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, flight (fugam)
2. Its indirect object, farmers

According to the preceding section, to the farmers is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:
45. **Rule.** Dative Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

46. We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers,* and we have

Nauta agricolis fugam nuntiat

47. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

*Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.*


Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§ 22. a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.

1 Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition to to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.
LESSON VI

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

48. The Ablative Case. Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the ab'la-tive.

49. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the ablative singular ends in -ā and the ablative plural in -is.

   a. Observe that the final -ā of the nominative is short, while the final -ā of the ablative is long, as,

      Nom. filiā  Abl. filiā

   b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

   c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.

50. The Ablative Relation. The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions from, with, by, at, in. It denotes

   1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or from which it is deprived — generally translated by from.

   2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done — translated by with or by.

   3. The place where or the time when something happens — translated by in or at.

   a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they study Latin with great zeal. In a short time they will be able to read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

51. Prepositions. While, as stated above (§ 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.
52. Rule. Object of a Preposition. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.

53. Prepositions denoting the ablative relations from, with, in, on, are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

ā or ab, from, away from

de, from, down from

e or ex, from, out from, out of

cum, with

in, in, on

1. Translate into Latin, using prepositions. In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

54. Adjectives. Examine the sentence

Puella parva bonam deam amat, the little girl loves the good goddess

In this sentence parva (little) and bonam (good) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called adjectives, and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of parva shows that it belongs to puella, and the ending of bonam that it belongs to deam. Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called agreement. Observe that the adjective and its noun agree in number and case.

55. Examine the sentences

Puella est parva, the girl is little

Puella parva bonam deam amat, the little girl loves the good goddess

In the first sentence the adjective parva is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a predicate adjective. In the second sentence the adjectives parva and

1 ā and ē are used only before words beginning with a consonant; ab and ex are used before either vowels or consonants.

2 Pick out the adjectives in the following: "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?' — 'Yes, sir,' said I. — 'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'"
bonam are closely attached to the nouns puella and deam respectively, and are called attributive adjectives.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

56. DIALOGUE

JULIA AND GALBA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Diāna, Iūlia, est pulchra dea lūnae et silvārum.
I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Lātōnae filia, Iūlia, est Diāna.
I. Quid Diāna portat?
G. Sagittās Diāna portat.
I. Cūr Diāna sagittās portat?
G. Diāna sagittās portat, Iūlia, quod malās fērās silvāe magnae necat.
I. Amatne Lātōna filiam?
G. Amat, et filia Lātōnam amat.
I. Quid filia tua parva portat?
G. Corōnās pulchrās filia mea parva portat.
I. Cui filia tua corōnās pulchrās dat?
G. Diānae corōnās dat.
I. Quis est cum filiā tuā? Estne sōla?
G. Sōla nōn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillā meā.

b. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the vocative (Latin vocāre, "to call"). In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative. In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. The Latin vocative rarely stands first. Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by yes or no in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question Is the sailor fighting? Pugnatne nauta? you would say Pugnat, he is fighting, or Nōn pugnat, he is not fighting.
LESSON VII

THE FIRST OR Ā-DECLENSION

57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a belong to the First Declension. It is also called the Ā-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel ā plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Use and General Meaning of Each Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domīn-a</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>of the lady, or the lady's</td>
<td>The possessor of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>to or for the lady</td>
<td>Expressing the relation to or for; especially the indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domin-am</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domin-ā</td>
<td>from, with, by, in, the lady</td>
<td>Separation (from), association or means (with, by), place where or time when (in, at)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Use and General Meaning of Each Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>the ladies</td>
<td>The same as the singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domin-ā’rum</td>
<td>of the ladies, or the ladies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domin-īs</td>
<td>to or for the ladies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domin-ās</td>
<td>the ladies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domin-īs</td>
<td>from, with, by, in, the ladies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58. The Base. That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the base.

Thus, in the declension above, domīn- is the base and -a is the termination of the nominative singular.
59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

pugna, terra, lūna, ancil’la, corō’na, insula, silva

60. Gender. In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called natural gender. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, “Have you seen my yacht? She is a beauty.” And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, “Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken it home.” Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called grammatical gender.

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Thus we have in Latin the three words, lapis, a stone; rūpēs, a cliff; and saxum, a rock. Lapis is masculine, rūpēs feminine, and saxum neuter. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and must always be learned, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

61. Gender of First-Declension Nouns. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus silva is feminine, but nauta, sailor, and agricola, farmer, are masculine.

62. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.


1 Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that to which a feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)
II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (parat) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter’s good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

63. CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolā in casā habitat?
2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat?
3. Quem agricola laudat?
4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam?
5. Cuius filia est grāta dominae?
6. Cui domina pecūniam dat?
LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued) •

64. We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together, and you have noticed an agreement between them in case and in number (§ 54). They agree also in gender. In the phrase silva magna, we have a feminine adjective in -a agreeing with a feminine noun in -a.


66. Feminine adjectives in -a are declined like feminine nouns in -a, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domina (base domin-), f., lady</td>
<td>bona (base bon-), good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>doˈmina</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominam</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dominārums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the same way decline together puella mala, the bad girl; ancilˈla parva, the little maid; fortūˈna magna, great fortune.

67. The words dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, take the ending -ābus instead of -is in the dative and ablative plural. Note the dative and ablative plural in the following declension:
**ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN**

**dea bona** (bases de- bon-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> dea bona</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> deae bonae</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> deae bonae</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> deam bonam</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> dea bonā</td>
<td>deā'bus bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. In the same way decline together filia parva.*

**68. Latin Word Order.** The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my, daughter, dinner, farmers.*

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. § 32. 1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

*I saw a game of football at Chicago last November* (normal order)

**Last November I saw a game of football at Chicago**

**At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of football**

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*. Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words — that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed — is as follows:

*subject — modifiers of the subject — indirect object — direct object — adverb — verb*

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. *Notice the order of the*
ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as filia mea, my daughter; mea filia, my daughter; casa Galbae, Galba’s cottage; Galbae casa, Galba’s cottage.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

Filia mea agricolis cēnam parat (normal order)
Mea filia agricolis parat cēnam (mea and cēnam emphatic)
Agricolis filia mea cēnam parat (agricolis emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

Filia mea casam parvam nōn amat (parvam not emphatic)
Filia mea parvam casam nōn amat (parvam more emphatic)
Parvam filia mea casam nōn amat (parvam very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as est, sunt) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

69. EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.

THE SECOND DECLENSION

First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 502–505

LESSON IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

70. Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

71. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Decle- 
sion ends in -us, -er, -ir, or -um. The genitive singular ends in -i.

72. Gender. Nouns in -um are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um. Masculines in -us and neuters in -um are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>do’m’inus</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>pilum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>pilī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>pilō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>pilum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>pilō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>domine</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>pilum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th></th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominō’rum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td>pilō’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominōs</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Compare the declension of domina and of dominus.
a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in -us ends in -è, as domine, O master; serve, O slave. This is the most important exception to the rule in § 56. a.

74. Write side by side the declension of domina, dominus, and pilum. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see § 73. b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.
b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.
c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in -m and the accusative plural in -s.
d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.
e. Final -i and -o are always long; final -a is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

75. Observe the sentences

Lesbia est bona, Lesbia is good
Lesbia est ancilla, Lesbia is a maidservant

We have learned (§ 55) that bona, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a predicate adjective. Similarly a noun, as ancilla, used in the predicate to define the subject is called a predicate noun.

76. Rule. Predicate Noun. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.
77. DIALOGUE

GALBA AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Mārce, est
dēgātus cum pilō et tubā?
M. Lēgātus, Galba,
est Sextus.
G. Ubi Sextus habi-
tat?\(^1\)
M. In oppidō Sextus
cum filiābus habitat.
G. Amantne oppidāni
Sextum?
M. Amant oppidāni
Sextum et laudant, quod
magnā cum cōnstantiā
pu gnat.
G. Ubi, Mārce, est
ancilla tua? Cūr nōn
cēnam parat?
M. Ancilla mea,Galba,
equō lēgātī aquam et
frūmentum dat.
G. Cūr nōn servus Sextū equum domini cūrat?
M. Sextus et servus ad mūrum oppidī properant. Oppidāni bellum
parant.\(^2\)

\(^1\) habitāt is here translated *does live*. Note the *three* possible translations
of the Latin present tense:

\[
\text{habitat} \begin{cases} 
\text{he lives} \\ 
\text{he is living} \\ 
\text{he does live}
\end{cases}
\]

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.

\(^2\) Observe that the verb *parō* means not only *to prepare* but also *to prepare for*, and governs the accusative case.
CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sextī habitant?
2. Quem oppidānī amant et laudant?
3. Quid ancilla equō lēgāti dat?
4. Cuius equum ancilla ĕcurat?
5. Quis ad mūrum cum Sextō properat?
6. Quid oppidānī parant?

LESSON X
SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like bona, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. Masculine adjectives of this class are declined like dominus, and neuters like pīlum. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

**Masculine Noun and Adjective**

dominus bonus, the good master

**Neuter Noun and Adjective**

pīlum bonum, the good spear

Bases domin- bon-

Bases pil- bon-

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>do'minus bonus</td>
<td>pīlum bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominī bonī</td>
<td>pilī bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominō bonō</td>
<td>pilō bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum bonum</td>
<td>pīlum bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominō bonō</td>
<td>pilō bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>domine bone</td>
<td>pīlum bonum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dominī bonī</td>
<td>pīla bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominōrum bonōrum</td>
<td>pilōrum bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominīs bonīs</td>
<td>pilīs bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominōs bonōs</td>
<td>pilā bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominīs bonīs</td>
<td>pilīs bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminations:

- **Masculine:** -us, -ī, -ō, -um
- **Neuter:** -ī, -ō, -um
Decline together bellum longum, equus parvus, servus malus, mūrus altus, frūmentum novum.

80. Observe the sentences

Lesbia ancilla est bona, *Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*
Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona, *the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*
Servus Lesbianum ancillam amat, *the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences *ancilla, ancillae, and ancillam* denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. Rule. Apposition. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

82. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Patria servī bonī, vicus servōrum bonōrum, bone popule.
2. Populus oppidi magnī, in oppidō magnō, in oppidis magnīs.

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for\(^1\) the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening\(^1\) to the little cottage\(^2\) of Julia, the farmer's daughter.

\(^1\) See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that cūrat is transitive and governs a direct object.
\(^2\) Not the dative. (Cf. § 43.)
LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

| Nom. bonī   | bonae     | bona   |
| Gen. bonorum| bonārum   | bonorum|
| Dat. bonīs  | bonīs     | bonīs  |
| Acc. bonōs  | bonās     | bona   |
| Abl. bonīs  | bonīs     | bonīs  |

a. Write the declension and give it orally across the page, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline grātus, -a, -um; malus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um; parvus, -a, -um.

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does not mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, nauta, sailor, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective bonus is of the second declension. Consequently, a good sailor is nauta bonus. So, the wicked farmer is agricola malus. Learn the following declensions:
EXERCISES

85. nauta bonus (bases naut- bon-), m., the good sailor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nauta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nautam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nautā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>nauta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

bonus | boni | bonorum |
boni  | bonis | bonis |
bonō  | bonōs | bonōs |
bonum| bonis | bonis |
bonō  | bonis | bonis |
bonē | boni | boni |

86. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.


II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba’s daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

1 Est, beginning a declarative sentence, there is.

GALEAE
LESSON XII

NOUNS IN -IUS AND -IUM

87. Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -i in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult; as, fili from filius (son), praesi’di from praesi’dium (garrison).

88. Proper names of persons in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, not in -ē, and the accent rests on the penult; as, Vergi’li, O Vergil; fili, O son.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

89. praesidium (base praesidi-), n., garrison    filius (base fili-), m., son

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>filius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>praesi’dī</td>
<td>filī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>praesidiō</td>
<td>filiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>filium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>praesidiō</td>
<td>filiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
<td>filī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is regular. Note that the -i- of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like filius.

Decline together praesidium parvum; filius bonus; fluvius longus, the long river; proelium clārum, the famous battle.

90. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

Nouns in \(-ER\) and \(-IR\)

**Germānia**


**Lesson XIII**

Second Declension (Continued)

91. Declension of Nouns in \(-er\) and \(-ir\). In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in \(-os\). This \(-os\) later became \(-us\) in words like servus, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in \(-r\), like puer, boy; ager, field; and vir, man. These words are therefore declined as follows:

92. puer, m., boy  
    ager, m., field  
    vir, m., man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>virum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Dative with finitus. (See § 43.)
ADJECTIVES IN -ER

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the
general rule (§ 74. a).

b. The declension differs from that of servus only in the nominative and
vocative singular.

c. Note that in puer the e remains all the way through, while in ager it is
present only in the nominative. In puer the e belongs to the base, but in
ager (base agr-) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it
easier to pronounce. Most words in -er are declined like ager. The genitive
shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.

93. Masculine adjectives in -er of the second declension are de-
clined like nouns in -er. A few of them are declined like puer, but
most of them like ager. The feminine and neuter nominatives show
which form to follow, thus,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum (free)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum (pretty)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is like puer
is like ager

For the full declension in the three genders, see § 469. b. c.

94. Decline together the words vir liber, terra libera, frumentum liberum,
puer pulcher, puella pulchra, oppidum pulchrum.

95. Italia

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fāma, patriae Rōmānōrum, et clāra est Rōma,
domina orbis terrārum. Tiberīm, fluvium Rōmānum, quis nōn laudat et
pulchrūs fluvīō finitimōs agrōs? Altōs mūrōs, longa et dūra bella,
clārās victoriās quis nōn laudat? Pulchra est terra Italia. Agri boni
agricolīs praemia dant magna, et equī agricolārum cōpiam frūmentī
ad oppida et vicīs portant. In agrīs populi Rōmāni labōrant multi
servi. Viae Italiae sunt longae et lātae. Finitima Italiae est insula
Sicilia.

1 In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of
the words. 2 orbis terrārum, of the world. 3 Tiberīm, the Tiber, accusative
case.
96.

**ADJECTIVES IN -ER**

**DIALOGUE**

**MARCUS AND CORNELIUS**

C. Ubi est, Mārce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrā terrā Italīā?
M. Nōn est, Cornēli, in Italīā. Ad fluvium Rhēnum properat cum
cōpiis Rōmānīs quia est 1 fāma
novī belli cum Germānīs. Liber
Germāniae populus Rōmānōs
nōn amat.

C. Estne filius tuus cōpiārum
Rōmānārum lēgātus?
M. Lēgātus nōn est, sed est
apud legiōnāriōs.

C. Quae 2 arma portat 3?
M. Scūtum magnum et lōri-
cam dúram et galeam pulchram
portat.

C. Quae tēla portat?
M. Glādium et pilum longūm
portat.

C. Amatne lēgātus filium
tuum?
M. Amat, et saepe filiō meō
praemia pulchra et praedam
multam dat.

C. Ubi est terra Germānōrum?
M. Terra Germānōrum, Cornēli, est fīnitima Rhēnō, fluvīō magnō
et altō.

---

1 *est*, before its subject, *there is*; so *sunt*, *there are.*
2 *Quae*, *what kind of,* an interrogative adjective pronoun.
3 *What are the three possible translations of the present tense?*
LESSON XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

97. Observe the sentences

This is my shield
This shield is mine

In the first sentence my is a possessive adjective; in the second mine is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, this shield is mine being equivalent to this shield is my shield. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes adjectives and sometimes pronouns.

98. The possessives my, mine, your, yours, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum  my, mine
2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum  your, yours
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum  his (own), her (own), its (own)

PLURAL

1st Pers. noster, nostrum  our, ours
2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum  your, yours
3d Pers. suus, sua, suum  their (own), theirs

Note. Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine mi, as mi fili, O my son.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the thing possessed in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

Sextus is calling his boy  Sextus  suum puerum vocat
Julia is calling her boy  Julia 

Observe that suum agrees with puerum, and is unaffected by the gender of Sextus or Julia.

b. When your, yours, refers to one person, use tuus; when to more than one, vester; as,

Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty  Corōnae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae
Girls, your wreaths are pretty  Corōnae vestae, puellae, sunt pulchrae
EXERCISES

c. Suus is a reflexive possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the subject. Thus, Vir suōs servōs vocat means The man calls his (own) slaves. Here his (suōs) refers to man (vir), and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. § 22. a.) This is especially true of suus, -a, -um, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our his own, her own, etc.

99.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.


II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark’s industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.1 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.2 4. There are frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant’s food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

1 Not the dative. Why? 2 Here the adjectives sick and wretched are used like nouns. 3 Where should sunt stand? Cf. I. 2 above.
LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH

100. Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§ 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition with. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by cum. This will become clear from the following sentences:

a. Mark is feeble with (for or because of) want of food
b. Diana kills the beasts with (or by) her arrows
c. Julia is with Sextus
d. The men fight with great steadiness

a. In sentence a, with want (of food) gives the cause of Mark’s feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the ablative of cause:

Marcus est infirmus inopiae cibi

b. In sentence b, with (or by) her arrows tells by means of what Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the ablative of means:

Diæna sagittis suis feræs necat

c. In sentence c we are told that Julia is not alone, but in company with Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition cum, and the construction is called the ablative of accompaniment:

Iulia est cum Sexto

d. In sentence d we are told how the men fight. The idea is one of manner. This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with cum, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case cum may be omitted. This construction is called the ablative of manner:

Virii (cum) constantiæ magnæ pugnant

101. You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting with:
THE ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH

102. **Rule.** Ablative of Cause. *Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.* This answers the question *Because of what?*

103. **Rule.** Ablative of Means. *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.* This answers the question *By means of what? With what?*

N.B. *Cum* must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

104. **Rule.** Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum.* This answers the question *With whom?*

105. **Rule.** Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative.* This answers the question *How? In what manner?*

106. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

107. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Rōmānī, clārus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agris suis, vicīs, oppidisque magnō studiō viri validi ad arma properant. Iam légātī cum legiōnāriīs ex Itālia ad Rhēnum, fluvium Germāniae altum et lā tum, properant, et servi equīs et carrīs cībūm frūmentumque ad castra Rōmāna portant. Inopīa bonōrum 5 telōrum infirmī sunt Germānī, sed Rōmānī armātī galeīs, lōricīs, scūtīs, gladiis, pilisque sunt validī.
II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

LESSON XVI

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ius</td>
<td>-ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Otherwise they are declined like bonus, -a, -um. Learn the list and the meaning of each:

- *alius, alia, aliud*, other, another (of several)
- *alter, altera, alterum*, the one, the other (of two)
- *ünus, -a, -um*, one, alone; (in the plural) only
- *üllus, -a, -um, any*

109. PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nüllus</td>
<td>nüla</td>
<td>nüllum</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nülli'us</td>
<td>nülli'us</td>
<td>nülli'us</td>
<td>ali'uus</td>
<td>ali'uus</td>
<td>ali'uus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nülli</td>
<td>nülli</td>
<td>nülli</td>
<td>ali</td>
<td>ali</td>
<td>ali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nüllum</td>
<td>nüllam</td>
<td>nüllum</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nüllö</td>
<td>nüllä</td>
<td>nüllö</td>
<td>aliö</td>
<td>aliä</td>
<td>aliö</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Plural is Regular
THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in -ā of alius. The genitive alius is rare. Instead of it use alterius, the genitive of alter.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see § 114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the pronominal adjectives.

110. Learn the following idioms:

alter, -era, -erum . . . alter, -era, -erum, the one . . . the other (of two)
alius, -a, -ud . . . alius, -a, -ud, one . . . another (of any number)
alli, -ae, -a . . . alli, -ae, -a, some . . . others

EXAMPLES

1. Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, the one town is large, the other small (of two towns).
2. Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, one town is strong, another weak (of towns in general).
3. Alli gladiōs, alli scūta portant, some carry swords, others shields.

111. EXERCISES


Note. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. weak because of) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.
LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS, EA, ID

112. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as this, that, these, those. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, Do you hear these? and sometimes adjectives, as, Do you hear these men? In the former case they are called demonstrative pronouns, in the latter demonstrative adjectives.

113. Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as pronouns and as adjectives. The one used most is

\[
\text{Singular} \begin{cases} 
\text{this} \\
\text{that}
\end{cases} \quad \text{Plural} \begin{cases} 
\text{these} \\
\text{those}
\end{cases}
\]

114. Is is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of alius, § 109.

| Base e- |
|------------------|------------------|
| **Singular**     | **Plural**       |
| Nom.   | is    | ea     | id     | eī (or iī) | cae | ca     |
| Gen.   | eius  | eius   | eius   | eōrum    | eārum | eōrum |
| Dat.   | eī    | eī     | eī     | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) |
| Acc.   | eum   | eam    | id     | eōs      | eās | ea     |
| Abl.   | eō    | eā     | eō     | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) | eīs (or iīs) |

Note that the base e- changes to i- in a few cases. The genitive singular eius is pronounced ek'ys. In the plural the forms with two i’s are preferred and the two i’s are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce iī as i and iīs as is.

115. Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun he, she, it. As a personal pronoun, then, is would have the following meanings:
COMPARISON BETWEEN SUUS AND IS

Nom. is, he; ea, she; id, it
Gen. eius, of him or his; eius, of her, her, or hers; eius, of it or its

SING.  Dat. ei, to or for him; ei, to or for her; ei, to or for it
Acc. eum, him; eam, her; id, it
Abl. eo, with, from, etc., him; ea, with, from, etc., her; eo, with, from, etc., it

Nom. ei or ii, eae, ea, they
Gen. eorum, ea rum, eorum, of them, their

PLUR.  Dat. eis or iiis, eis or iiis, eis or iiis, to or for them
Acc. eis, eais, ea, them
Abl. eis or iiis, eis or iiis, eis or iiis, with, from, etc., them

116. Comparison between suus and is. We learned above (§ 98. c) that suus is a reflexive possessive. When his, her (poss.), its, their, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express his, her, its by eius, the genitive singular of is, ea, id; and their by the genitive plural, using eorum to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and eárum to refer to a feminine one.

EXAMPLES

Galba calls his (own) son, Galba suum filium vocat
Galba calls his son (not his own, but another’s), Galba eius filium vocat
Julia calls her (own) children, Julia suós liberós vocat
Julia calls her children (not her own, but another’s), Julia eius liberós vocat

The men praise their (own) boys, virí suós puerós laudant
The men praise their boys (not their own, but others’), virí eorum puerós laudant

117. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287:

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (her own). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (not her own). 6. The Gaul praises
EXERCISES

his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

118. DIALOGUE

CORNELIUS AND MARCUS

M. Quis est vir, Corneli, cum puerō parvō? Estne Rōmānus et liber?
C. Rōmānus nūn est, Marce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvis Galliae.
M. Estne puer filius eius servi an alterius?
C. Neutrius filius est puer. Is est filius lēgāti Sextī.
M. Quō puer cum eō servi properat?
C. Is cum servi properat ad lātōs Sextī agrōs. 2 Tōtum frūmentum est iam mātūrum et magnus servōrum numerus in Italīae 3 agrīs labōrat.
M. Agricolae sunt Gallī et patriae suae agrōs arant?
M. Magister noster puerīs puellīisque grātās Gallōrum fābulās saepe narrat et laudat eōs saepe.
C. Mala est fortūna eōrum et saepe miserī servi multīs cum lacrimis patriam suam désiderant.

1 There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason. 2 When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive, noun*. 3 A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.

Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, §§ 506-509
LEsson XVIII

Conjugation

The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses of sum

119. The inflection of a verb is called its conjugation (cf. § 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in tense, mood, voice, person, and number.

120. The Tenses. The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its tenses. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

1. The present, that is, what is happening now, or what usually happens, is expressed by

The Present Tense

2. The past, that is, what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened, is expressed by

The Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses

3. The future, that is, what is going to happen, is expressed by

The Future and Future Perfect Tenses

121. The Moods. Verbs have inflection of mood to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive.

a. A verb is in the indicative mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

122. The Persons. There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (I sing); the second person the person spoken to (you sing); the third person the person spoken of
(he sings). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. § 22 a; 29). We have already learned that -t is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and -nt of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>thou or you</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m or -ô</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

123. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called regular verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called irregular. The verb to be is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

**Present Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Pers.</td>
<td>su-m, I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers.</td>
<td>e-s, you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>er-a-t, he, she, or it is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>su-mus, we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es-tis, you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su-nt, they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er-a-m, I was</td>
<td>er-a-s, you were</td>
<td>er-a-t, he, she, or it was</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er-a'-mus, we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er-a'-tis, you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er-a-nt, they were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er-ô, I shall be</td>
<td>er-i-s, you will be</td>
<td>er-i-t, he will be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er'-i-mus, we shall be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er'-i-tis, you will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er-u-nt, they will be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§ 12. 2; 14; 15.

1 Observe that in English you are, you were, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.
124. DIALOGUE

THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Márcē? Ubi est Quintus? Ubi estis, amīci?
M. Cum Quintō, Sexte, in silvā sum. Nōn sōlī sumus; sunt in
silvā multī aliī puerī.

S. Nunc laetus es, sed nūper nōn laetus erās. Cūr miser erās?
M. Miser eram quia amīci mei erant in aliō vicō et eram sōlus.

Nunc sum apud sociōs meōs. Nunc laetī sumus et erimus.

S. Erātisne in lūdō hodiē?
M. Hodiē nōn erāmus in lūdō, quod magister erat aeger.

S. Eritisne mox in lūdō?
M. Amīci meī ibi erunt, sed ego (I) nōn erō.

S. Cūr nōn ibi eris? Magister, saepe īrātus, inopiam tuam studī
diligentiaēque nōn laudat.

M. Nūper aeger eram et nunc īnfirmus sum.

125. EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (sing. and plur.). 2. I am, I
was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were,
we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he
was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day
I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy
because of the boys’ industry.
LESSON XIX

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS · PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMÔ AND MONEÔ

126. There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.¹ This vowel is called the distinguishing vowel, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

Below is given the present infinitive of a verb of each conjugation, the present stem, and the distinguishing vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pres. Infin.</th>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>Distinguishing Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā' re, to love</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē' re, to advise</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re'gēre, to rule</td>
<td>regē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī' re, to hear</td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>ĩ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

Note. The present infinitive of sum is esse, and es- is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a'mô, amā' re (love)</th>
<th>mo'neô, monē' re (advise)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>monē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. a'mô, I love</td>
<td>mo'neô, I advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a'mâs, you love</td>
<td>mo'nēs, you advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a'mat, he (she, it) loves</td>
<td>mo'nēt, he (she, it) advises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| amā'mus, we love    | monē'mus, we advise      | -mus             |
| Plur.               |                           |                  |
| 2. a'mâtis, you love| monē'tis, you advise     | -tis             |
| 3. a'mant, they love| monē'nt, they advise     | -nt              |

¹ The stem is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. § 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in § 230.
1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses -ō and not -m. The form amō is for amā-ō, the two vowels ā-ō contracting to ē. In moneō there is no contraction. Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eō belong to the second conjugation.

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (monē-ō = mo‘nēō), and before final -t (amāt, monēt) and -nt (amānt, monēnt). Compare § 12.2.

129. Like amō and moneō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs¹:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a’rō, I plow</td>
<td>arā’re, to plow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūrō, I care for</td>
<td>cūrā’re, to care for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dēlēō, I destroy</td>
<td>dēlē’re, to destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsiderō, I long for</td>
<td>dēsiderā’re, to long for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō,2 I give</td>
<td>da’re, to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ha’beō, I have</td>
<td>habē’re, to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha’bitō, I live, I dwell</td>
<td>habitā’re, to live, to dwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*iu’beō, I order</td>
<td>iubē’re, to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lābō’rō, I labor</td>
<td>labōrā’re, to labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lau’dō, I praise</td>
<td>laudā’re, to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātū’re, I hasten</td>
<td>māturā’re, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mo’veō, I move</td>
<td>movē’re, to move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nār’rō, I tell</td>
<td>nārrā’re, to tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne’cō, I kill</td>
<td>necā’re, to kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntiō, I announce</td>
<td>nūntiā’re, to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa’rō, I prepare</td>
<td>parā’re, to prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por’tō, I carry</td>
<td>portā’re, to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro’perō, I hasten</td>
<td>properā’re, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pug’nō, I fight</td>
<td>pugnā’re, to fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vi’deō, I see</td>
<td>vidē’re, to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vo’cō, I call</td>
<td>vocā’re, to call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

130. The Translation of the Present. In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, I live, I am living, or I do live. In Latin the one expression habitō covers all three of these expressions.

¹ The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings. ² Observe that in dō, dāre, the a is short, and that the present stem is dā- and not dā-. The only forms of dō that have a long are dās (pres. indic.), dā (pres. impv.), and dans (pres. part.).
131. EXERCISES

Give the voice, mood, tense, person, and number of each form.


N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (sing.). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

LESSON XX

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ

132. Tense Signs. Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like was, shall, will, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called tense signs.

133. Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect. The tense sign of the imperfect is -bā-, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loving</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inflection is as follows:

**Conjugation I**

1. amāˈbam, I was loving
2. amāˈbās, you were loving
3. amāˈbat, he was loving

**Conjugation II**

1. monēˈbam, I was advising
2. monēˈbās, you were advising
3. monēˈbat, he was advising

**Personal Endings**

- m
- s
- t
### IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amābā'mus, we were loving</td>
<td>monēbā'mus, we were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amābā'tis, you were loving</td>
<td>monēbā'tis, you were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amā'bant, they were loving</td>
<td>monē'bant, they were advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a.** Note that the ā of the tense sign -bā- is shortened before -nt, and before m and t when final. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

### 134. Meaning of the Imperfect

The Latin imperfect describes an act as **going on or progressing in past time**, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

### 135. EXERCISES


**II.** 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

### 136. Nyōbe AND HER CHILDREN

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niobē, rēgīna Thēbānōrum, erat pulchra fēmina sed superba. Erat superba nōn sōlum fōrmā¹ suā maritique potentiā² sed etiam magnō liberōrum numerō.¹ Nam habēbat² septem filiōs et septem filiās. Sed ea superbia erat rēgīnae³ causa magnae trīstitiae et liberis⁸ causa dūrae poenae.

**Note.** The words Niobē, Thēbānōrum, and marīti will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

1 Ablative of cause. ² Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See § 134.) ³ Dative, cf. § 43.
LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ

137. The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is -bi-. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

138. The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows:

**Conjugation I**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amā'bō, I shall love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amā'bis, you will love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amā'bit, he will love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conjugation II**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>monē'bō, I shall advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>monē'bis, you will advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>monē'bit, he will advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a.** The personal endings are as in the present. The ending -bō in the first person singular is contracted from -bi-ō. The -bi- appears as -bu- in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum. Pay especial attention to the accent.

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

139. EXERCISES


II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will
move, you will give, (sing. and plur.). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (plur.). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (sing. and plur.), he will destroy.

140. Ni'ore and her Children (Concluded)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


Note. Consult the general vocabulary for Apollō, inquit, duōs, and quattuordecim. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

LESSON XXII

REVIEW OF VERBS · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of sum and the verbs in § 129.

142. We learned in § 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 44 that one of its commonest uses is with verbs to express the indirect object. It is also very common with adjectives to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases

1 Observe the force of the imperfect here, used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing; so amābant denotes a past situation of affairs. (See § 134.) 2 Ablative of cause. 3 Ablative of means. 4 This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.
where *gratus*, *agreeable to*, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had *molestus*, *annoying to*, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

143. **Rule. Dative with Adjectives.** The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites*.

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

*idoneus*, -a, -um, *fit, suitable (for)*
*amicus*, -a, -um, *friendly (to)*
*inimicus*, -a, -um, *hostile (to)*
*gratus*, -a, -um, *pleasing (to), agreeable (to)*
*molestus*, -a, -um, *annoying (to), troublesome (to)*
*finitimus*, -a, -um, *neighboring (to)*
*proximus*, -a, -um, *nearest, next (to)*

145. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field\(^1\) suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

\(^1\) Why not the dative?
146. 

**CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


**NOTE.** Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

---

**LESSON XXIII**

**PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGÔ AND AUDIÔ**

147. As we learned in §126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -ē, and of the fourth in -ī. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

**Conjugation III**

- re'gō, re'gere (rule)
- Pres. Stem regē-

**Singular**

1. re'gō, I rule
2. re'gis, you rule
3. re'git, he (she, it) rules

**Conjugation IV**

- au'diō, audī're (hear)
- Pres. Stem audī-

**Singular**

- au'diō, I hear
- au'dis, you hear
- au'dit, he (she, it) hears

**Plural**

1. re'gimus, we rule
2. re'gitis, you rule
3. re'gunt, they rule

- au'dimus, we hear
- au'ditis, you hear
- au'diunt, they hear

1. The personal endings are the same as before.
2. The final short -e- of the stem regē- combines with the -ō in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -i- elsewhere. The inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum.

1 Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. §134.)
3. In audiō the personal endings are added regularly to the stem audi-. In the third person plural -u- is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as audi-u-nt. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final -t just as in amō and moneō. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

Note that -i- is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. § 12. 1, 2.)

148. Like regō and audiō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agō, I drive</td>
<td>agere, to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō, I say</td>
<td>dīcere, to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, I lead</td>
<td>dūcere, to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, I send</td>
<td>mittere, to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūniō, I fortify</td>
<td>mūnire, to fortify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperīō, I find</td>
<td>reperīre, to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venīō, I come</td>
<td>venire, to come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

149. Exercises


II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (sing. and plur.). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive; he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (all plur.).

150. Cornelia and Her Jewels (Concluded)

Proximum domiciliō Cornēliae erat pulchrae Campānae domicilium. Campāna erat superba nōn sōlum fōrmā suā sed maximē ōrnāmentīs suis. Ea1 laudābat semper. “Habēsne tū ūlla ōrnāmenta, Cornēlia?”

1Ea, accusative plural neuter.

**Note.** The only new words here are Campāna, semper, and tū.

---

**"Puérī meī sunt mea ornamenta"**

---

**Lesson XXIV**

**Imperfect active indicative of regō and audiō · The dative with special intransitive verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>151.</th>
<th>Paradigms</th>
<th>Conjugation III</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'bam, I was ruling</td>
<td>audiē'bam, I was hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'bās, you were ruling</td>
<td>audiē'bās, you were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'bat, he was ruling</td>
<td>audiē'bat, he was hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td>regēbā'mus, we were ruling</td>
<td>audiēbā'mus, we were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regēbā'tis, you were ruling</td>
<td>audiēbā'tis, you were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'bant, they were ruling</td>
<td>audiē'bant, they were hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The tense sign is -bā-, as in the first two conjugations.
2. Observe that the final -ē- of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign -bā-. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. monēbam and regēbam).
3. In the fourth conjugation -ē- is inserted between the stem and the tense sign -bā- (audi-ē-ba-m).
4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in §148.

152.

EXERCISES


II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (sing. and plur.), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (sing. and plur.), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (sing. and plur.), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (sing. and plur.), we were coming, they were ruling.

153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. We learned above (§20.a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an intransitive verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. §43.)

crēdō, crēdere, believe (give belief to)
faveō, favēre, favor (show favor to)
noceō, nocēre, injure (do harm to)
pāreō, pāre, obey (give obedience to)
persuādeō, persuādere, persuade (offer persuasion to)
resistō, resistere, resist (offer resistance to)
studeō, studēre, be eager for (give attention to)
154. Rule. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs creō, faveō, noceō, ἐπικνῆσθαι, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.

155. Exercise

2. Meī finītimi cōnsiliō tuō nōn favēbunt, quod bellō student. 3. Tiberiūs et Gāius disciplīnae dūrae nōn resistēbant et Cornēliae pārbant.

Lesson XXV

Future Active Indicative of regō and audiō

156. In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using -bi-, as in the first and second conjugations, we use -ā- in the first person singular and -ē- in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final -ē- of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final -ī- of the stem is retained.

157. Paradigms

Conjugation III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Conjugation IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ré'gam, I shall rule</td>
<td>au'diam, I shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ré'gēs, you will rule</td>
<td>au'diēs, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ré'get, he will rule</td>
<td>au'diet, he will hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. regē'mus, we shall rule</td>
<td>audiē'mus, we shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regē'tis, you will rule</td>
<td>audiē'tis, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. regē'gent, they will rule</td>
<td>au'dient, they will hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The -ā- is shortened before -m final, and -ē- before -t final and before -nt.
(Cf. § 12. 2.) 2 The -ī- is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel.
(Cf. § 12. 1.)
66 VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.
2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

158. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicet, dūcētis, mūniēmus. 2. Dicent, dicētis, mittēmus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (sing. and plur.), he will say.
5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.
6. Who will believe the story? I shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

LESSON XXVI

VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION - THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

159. There are a few common verbs ending in -iō which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. § 126.) Compare

audiō, audīre (hear), fourth conjugation
capiō, ca’pere (take), third conjugation

1 Remember that quis, who, is singular in number. 2 Express by ego, because it is emphatic.
160. The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of capio are inflected as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Present} & & \text{Imperfect} & & \text{Future} \\
1. \text{ca’pio} & & \text{capiē’bam} & & \text{ca’piam} \\
2. \text{ca’pis} & & \text{capiē’bās} & & \text{ca’piēs} \\
3. \text{ca’pit} & & \text{capiē’bat} & & \text{ca’piēt} \\
\text{Imperfect} & & \text{Future} & & \\
1. \text{ca’pimus} & & \text{capiēbā’mus} & & \text{capiē’mus} \\
2. \text{ca’pitis} & & \text{capiēbā’tis} & & \text{capiē’tis} \\
3. \text{ca’piunt} & & \text{capiē’bant} & & \text{ca’piēnt} \\
\end{align*}
\]

1. Observe that capio and the other -io verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation two vowels occur in succession. (Cf. capio, audiō; capiunt, audiunt; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. capis, regis; capit, regit; etc.)

2. Like capio, inflect

faciō, facere, make, do  
faciē, facere, hurle  
fugiō, fugere, flee  
faciē, fugere, seize

161. The Imperative Mood. The imperative mood expresses a command; as, come! send! The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Conjugation} & & \text{Singular} & & \text{Plural} \\
1. & & \text{amā, love thou} & & \text{amā’tē, love ye} \\
2. & & \text{monē, advise thou} & & \text{monē’tē, advise ye} \\
3. & & \begin{align*}(a) & \text{rege, rule thou} \\
(b) & \text{cape, take thou} \end{align*} & & \begin{align*}(a) & \text{re’gite, rule ye} \\
(b) & \text{ca’pite, take ye} \end{align*} \\
4. & & \text{audī, hear thou} & & \text{audī’tē, hear ye} \\
\text{sum (irregular)} & & \text{es, be thou} & & \text{este, be ye} \\
\end{align*}
\]

1. In the third conjugation the final -ē- of the stem becomes -ī- in the plural.
2. The verbs dícō, say; dúcō, lead; and faciō, make, have the irregular forms dīc, dúc, and fac in the singular.

3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of veniō, dúcō, vocō, doceō, laudō, dícō, sedeō, agō, faciō, muniō, mittō, rapiō.

162. EXERCISES


II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak. 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell the famous story to your children.

Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§ 510-512

LESSON XXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE · PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF AMŪ AND MONEŌ

163. The Voices. Thus far the verb forms have been in the active voice; that is, they have represented the subject as performing an action; as,

The lion —→ killed —→ the hunter

A verb is said to be in the passive voice when it represents its subject as receiving an action; as,

The lion —← was killed —← by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

1 Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. § 99. II. 3.) 2 Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.
164. Passive Personal Endings. In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & : & \text{ Plur.} \\
1. & -r, I & 1. & -mūr, we \\
2. & -ris, -re, you & 2. & -minī, you \\
3. & -tur, he, she, it & 3. & -ntur, they
\end{align*}
\]

a. Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the passive sign.

165. PARADIGMS

**amō, amāre**  
Pres. Stem **amā-**  

**moneō, monēre**  
Pres. Stem **monē-**

**Present Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Present Indicative</th>
<th>Personal Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a'mor, I am loved</td>
<td>mo'n'or, I am advised</td>
<td>-or ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'ris or amā're, you are loved</td>
<td>monē'ris or monē're, you are advised</td>
<td>-ris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'tur, he is loved</td>
<td>monē'tur, he is advised</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'mur, we are loved</td>
<td>monē'mur, we are advised</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā'mini, you are loved</td>
<td>monē'mini, you are advised</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aman'tur, they are loved</td>
<td>monen'tur, they are advised</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect Indicative** (Tense Sign -bā-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Imperfect Indicative</th>
<th>Personal Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā'bar, I was being loved</td>
<td>monē'bar, I was being advised</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'ris or amābā're, you were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'ris or monēbā're, you were being advised</td>
<td>-ris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'tur, he was being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'tur, he was being advised</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'mur, we were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'mur, we were being advised</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābā'mini, you were being loved</td>
<td>monēbā'mini, you were being advised</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāban'tur, they were being loved</td>
<td>monēban'tur, they were being advised</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is -or.
EXERCISES

FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāˈbor, I shall be loved</td>
<td>amāˈbitur, he will be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāˈberis or amāˈbere, you will be loved</td>
<td>amāˈbimur, we shall be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēˈbor, I shall be advised</td>
<td>monēˈbitur, he will be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēˈberis or monēˈbere, you will be advised</td>
<td>monēˈbimur, we shall be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ris or -re</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tur</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.
2. In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first person, -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the third person plural.
3. Inflect laudō, necō, portō, moveō, dēleō, iubeō, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

166. Intransitive verbs, such as mātūrō, I hasten; habītō, I dwell, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

167.

I. 1. Laudāris or laudāre, laudās, datur, dat. 2. Dabitur, dabit, vidēmini, vidētis. 3. Vocābat, vocābatur, dēlebitis, dēlebimini. 4. Parābātur, parābat, cūrās, cūrāris or cūrāre. 5. Portābantur, portābant, vidēbimur, vidēbimus. 6. Iubēris or iubēre, iubēs, laudābāris or laudābāre, laudābās. 7. Movēberis or movēbere, movēbis, dabantur, dabant. 8. Dēlentur, dēlent, parābāmur, parābāmus.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2. I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3. You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4. I am called, I call,
you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT

168.

Per'seus and Androm'eda

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,¹ maximī² deōrum. Dé eó multās fābulās nārrant poētae. Eī favent deī, ei magica arma et ālās dant. Eīs tēlis armātus et ālīs frētus ad multās terrās volābat et mōnstra saeva dēē-bat et miserīs īnfirmisque auxiliōm dabat.

¹ Iovis, the genitive of Iuppiter. ² Used substantively, the greatest. So below, l. 4, miserīs and īnfirmīs are used substantively.
PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

Aethiopia est terra Áfricae. Eam terram Cēpheus¹ regēbat. Eī² Neptūnus, maximus aquārum deus, erat ūrātus et mittit³ mōnstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam. Ibi mōnstrum nōn sōlum lātīs pulchrisque Aethiopiae agris nocēbat sed etiam domicilia agricolārum dēlēbat, et 5 multōs virōs, fēminās, liberōsque necābat. Populus ex agris fugiēbat et oppida mūris validīs mūniēbat. Tum Cēpheus magnā tristitiā com-
mōtus ad Iovis ōrāculum properat et ita dīcit: “Amīci mei necantur; agrī mei vāstantur. Audi verba mea, Iuppiter. Dā miserīs auxi-
līum. Age mōnstrum saevum ex patriā.”

LESSON XXVIII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE
PASSIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

169. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of regō and audiō, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§ 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§ 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final -e- of the stem is not changed to -i-, as it is in the active. We therefore have reˈgeris or reˈgere, not reˈgiris, reˈgire.

c. Inflect agō, dīcō, dúcō, mūniō, reperiō, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

170. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agēbat, agēbātur, mittēbat, mittēbātur, dúcēbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mūniunt. 3. Mittor, mittar, mittam, dú-
cēre, dúcere. 4. Dicēmur, dīcimus, dicēmus, dicēmur, mūniēbāmini. 5. Dūcitur, dūcimini, reperiēmur, reperiār, agitur. 6. Agēbāmus, agēbāmur, reperiēris, reperiēmini. 7. Mūniēmini, veniēbam, dúcēbar,

¹ Pronounce in two syllables, Cēpheus. ² Eī, at him, dative with ūrātus. ³ The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (sing. and plur.). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (sing. and plur.). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (sing. and plur.).

171. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


LESSON XXIX

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF -IŌ VERBS · PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

172. Review the active voice of capiō, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§ 492).

a. The present forms capiōr and capiuntur are like audior, audiuntur, and the rest of the tense is like regor.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of iacīō and rapiō.

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, amāre, to love. Infinitive means unlimited. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the finite, or limited, verb forms.
THE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

174. The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>amā're, to love</td>
<td>amā'ri, to be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>monē're, to advise</td>
<td>monē'ri, to be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>rege-</td>
<td>re'gere, to rule</td>
<td>re'gī, to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cape-</td>
<td>cá'pere, to take</td>
<td>ca'pī, to be taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>audī're, to hear</td>
<td>audī'ri, to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add -re to the present stem.

a. The present infinitive of sum is esse. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final -e to -i, except in the third conjugation, which changes final -ere to -ī.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of doceō, sedēō, volō, curō, mittō, dūcō, muffō, reperiō, iaciō, rapiō.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>Plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONJ.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>a'mā</td>
<td>amā're, be thou loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amā'te</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo'nē</td>
<td>monē're, be thou advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monē'te</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re'ge</td>
<td>re'gere, be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>re'gite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ca'pe</td>
<td>ca'pere, be thou taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ca'pite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>au'dī</td>
<td>audī're, be thou heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audī'te</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in § 174. 3.

1 For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from § 161. 2 That is, using the personal ending -re. A form like amā're may be either indicative, infinitive, or imperative.
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

LESSON XXX

SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS • THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM

177. You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation I</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em></td>
<td><em>amābō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imperf.</em></td>
<td><em>amābam</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut.</em></td>
<td><em>amābor</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.
### Conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> a'mā</td>
<td>a'mā're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive</strong> amā're</td>
<td>amā'ri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> mo'nē</td>
<td>monē're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive</strong> monē're</td>
<td>monē'ri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation III

#### Indicative (-iō verbs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> re'gō</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperf.</strong> rege'bam</td>
<td>regē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> re'gam</td>
<td>re'gar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>re'ge</td>
<td>re'gere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>re'gere</td>
<td>re'gī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugation IV

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> au'diō</td>
<td>au'dior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperf.</strong> audiē'bam</td>
<td>audiē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> au'diam</td>
<td>au'diar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>au'di</td>
<td>audi're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audi're</td>
<td>audi'ri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Give the synopsis of rapiō, mūniō, reperiō, doceā, videā, ōicō, agō, laudō, portō, and vary the person and number.

178. We learned in § 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.
179. **Rule.** Ablative of the Place From. *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā or ab, dē, ē or ex.*

*Agricolaec ex agris veniunt, the farmers come from the fields*

*ā or ab denotes *from near a place; ē or ex, out from it; and dē, down from it. This may be represented graphically as follows:

\[
\text{ā or ab} \quad \text{Place} \quad \text{ē or ex}
\]

\[
\text{dē}
\]

180. **Rule.** Ablative of Separation. *Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.*

*a. If the separation is actual and literal of one material thing from another, the preposition ā or ab, ē or ex, or dē is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.*

\(\text{(a) Perseus terram ā mōnstrīs liberat} \)
*Perseus frees the land from monsters (literal separation — actual motion is expressed)*

\(\text{(b) Perseus terram trīstitiā liberat} \)
*Perseus frees the land from sorrow (figurative separation — no actual motion is expressed)*

181. **Rule.** Ablative of the Personal Agent. *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab.*

*a. In this construction the English translation of ā, ab is by rather than from. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the act was performed.*

*Mōnstrum ā Perseo necātur, the monster is being slain by (lit. from) Perseus*
b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be Perseus mōnstrum necat, Perseus is slaying the monster. In the passive the object of the active verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active verb becomes the ablative of the personal agent, with ā or ab.

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition by. (Cf. § 100. b.) Means is a thing; the agent or actor is a person. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has ā or ab. Compare

Fēra sagittā necātur, the wild beast is killed by an arrow
Fēra ā Diānā necātur, the wild beast is killed by Diana

Sagittā, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; ā Diānā, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

182. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

1 inīmicīs, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.
PERFECT TENSES OF SUM

LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF SUM

183. Principal Parts. There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the principal parts.

In English the principal parts are the present, the past, and the past participle; as, go, went, gone; see, saw, seen, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular of the perfect indicative, and the perfect passive participle.

184. Conjugation Stems. From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the present stem, which is found from the present infinitive (cf. § 126. a). The other two stems are the perfect stem and the participial stem.

185. The Perfect Stem. The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be found by dropping -i from the first person singular of the perfect, the third of the principal parts.

From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE
THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT)
THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

186. The Endings of the Perfect. The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

SING. 1. -i, I 2. -isti, you 3. -i, he, she, it

PLUR. 1. -imus, we 2. -istis, you 3. -erunt or -ère, they
187. Inflection of sum in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>fui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Stem fu-**

**Singular**

- fuī, I have been, I was
- fuis’tī, you have been, you were
- fu’īt, he has been, he was

**Plural**

- fuimus, we have been, we were
- fuis’tis, you have been, you were
- fuē’runt or fuē’re, they have been, they were

**Pluperfect (Tense Sign -erā-)**

- fu’eram, I had been
- fu’erās, you had been
- fu’erat, he had been

**Future Perfect (Tense Sign -eri-)**

- fu’erō, I shall have been
- fu’eris, you will have been
- fu’erit, he will have been

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding eram, the imperfect of sum, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is -erā-.
3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding erō, the future of sum, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in -erint, not in -erunt. The tense sign is -eri-.
4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

188. **Dialogue**

**The Boys Titus, Marcus, and Quintus**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quinte?
T. Ego in meō lūdō fui et Quīntus in suō lūdō fuit. Bonī puerī fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vicīō hodiē?
M. Fuit. Nūper per agrōs proximōs fluvīō properābat. Ibi is et Cornēlius habent nāvigium.
THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

T. Navigium dicis? Alii\(^1\) nārā eam fābulam!
M. Vērō (Yes, truly), pulchrum et novum nāvigium!
Q. Cuius pecūniā\(^2\) Sextus et Cornēlius id nāvigium parant? Quis iis pecūniam dat?
M. Amīci Cornēli multum habent aurum et puer pecūniā nōn eget.
T. Quō puerī nāvigabunt? Nāvigabuntne longē ā terrā?
M. Dubia sunt cōnsilia eōrum. Sed hodiē, crēdō, si ventus erit idō-neus, ad maximam insulam nāvigabunt. Iam anteā ibi fuērunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et puerī magnō in periculō erant.
Q. Aqua ventō commōta est inimica nautīs semper, et saepe perfidus ventus nāvigia rapit, agit, dēletque. Ii puerī, si nōn fuerint maximē attenti, irātā aquā et validō ventō superābuntur et ita interficiuntur.

EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school.
2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river.
3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him.
4. Who says so? Marcus. 5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6. Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7. There\(^3\) will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.\(^4\)

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

190. Meanings of the Perfect. The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with have, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, I have finished my work. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the perfect definite.

\(^{1}\) Dative case. (Cf. §109.) \(^{2}\) Ablative of means. \(^{3}\) The expletive there is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English. \(^{4}\) This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with we.
The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened sometime in the past; as, I finished my work. As no definite time is specified, this is called the perfect indefinite. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

\[
\begin{align*}
I & \{ \text{was finishing} \} \text{my work (imperfect, § 134)} \\
I & \text{finished my work (perfect indefinite)} \\
I & \text{have finished my work (perfect definite)}
\end{align*}
\]

When telling a story the Latin uses the perfect indefinite to mark the different forward steps of the narrative, and the imperfect to describe situations and circumstances that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

191. Inflection of the Perfect. We learned in § 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I have loved      I have advised      I have ruled      I have taken      I have heard
I loved or        I advised or        I ruled or        I took or        I heard or
did love          did advise         did rule          did take         did hear

Perfect Stems

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>rēx-</td>
<td>cēp-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sing.    

1. amā́vī  mo’nuī  rē’xī  cē’pī  audī’vī
2. amāvis’tī monuis’tī rēxis’tī cēpis’tī audīvis’tī
3. amā’vit mo’nuit rē’xīt cē’pit audīvit

Plural

1. amāvīmus monu’imus rē’ximus cē’pimus audīvīmus
2. amāvis’tis monuis’tis rēxis’tis cēpis’tis audīvis’tis
3. amāvē’runt monuē’runt rēxe’runt cēpē’runt audīvē’runt
   or amāvē’re or monuē’re or rēxe’re or cēpē’re or audīvē’re
1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding -vī to the present stem. Like amāvī inflect parāvī, vocāvī, cūrāvī, laudāvī.

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

192. Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dāre</td>
<td>dedī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōleō</td>
<td>dēlēre</td>
<td>dēlēvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō</td>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>habuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moveō</td>
<td>movēre</td>
<td>mōvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>pārēre</td>
<td>pāruī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>prohibēre</td>
<td>prohibuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vidī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicō</td>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dīxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discēdō</td>
<td>discēdere</td>
<td>dīssēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūxī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mīsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müniō</td>
<td>müniere</td>
<td>müniwī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>venire</td>
<td>vēnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

193. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cēpheus, adversā fortūnā maximē commōtus, discissit et multis cum lacrimīs populō Aethiopiae verba ērāculī narrāvit. Fāta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, à tōtō populō dēplōrābantur, tamen nūllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cēpheus cum plēnō tristitiae animō cāram suam filiam ex oppidi portā ad aquam dūxit et braccia eius ad saxa dūra revīnxit. Tum amīci puellae miserae longē discissērunt et diū mónstrum saevum exspectāvērunt.

Tum forte Perseus, ēlis frētus, super Aethiopiam volābat. Vidit populum, Andromedam, lacrimās, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram dēscendit. Tum Cēpheus ei tōtās cūrās narrāvit et ita dixit: "Pārēbō verbis ōrāculī, et prō patriā filiam meam dabō; sed si id mónstrum interficiēs et Andromedam servābis, tibi (to you) eam dabō."
**LESSON XXXIII**

**PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE**

**PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>194.</th>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>audiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Stems</strong></td>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>rēx-</td>
<td>cēp-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiū-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect Indicative Active**

**Tense Sign** -ērā-

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had loved</th>
<th>I had advised</th>
<th>I had ruled</th>
<th>I had taken</th>
<th>I had heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'veram</td>
<td>monu'eram</td>
<td>rē'xeram</td>
<td>cē'peram</td>
<td>audi'veram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'verās</td>
<td>monu'erās</td>
<td>rē'xerās</td>
<td>cē'perās</td>
<td>audi'verās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verat</td>
<td>monu'erat</td>
<td>rē'xerat</td>
<td>cē'perat</td>
<td>audi'verat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'verā'mus</td>
<td>monu'erā'mus</td>
<td>rē'xerā'mus</td>
<td>cē'perā'mus</td>
<td>audi'verā'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'vererā'tis</td>
<td>monu'erā'tis</td>
<td>rē'xerā'tis</td>
<td>cē'perā'tis</td>
<td>audi'verā'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verant</td>
<td>monu'erant</td>
<td>rē'xerant</td>
<td>cē'perant</td>
<td>audi'verant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect Indicative Active**

**Tense Sign** -eri-

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'verō</td>
<td>monu'erō</td>
<td>rē'xerō</td>
<td>cē'perō</td>
<td>audi'verō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'verēs</td>
<td>monu'erēs</td>
<td>rē'xerēs</td>
<td>cē'perēs</td>
<td>audi'verēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verit</td>
<td>monu'erit</td>
<td>rē'xerit</td>
<td>cē'perit</td>
<td>audi'verit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'verīmus</td>
<td>monu'erīmus</td>
<td>rē'xerīmus</td>
<td>cē'perīmus</td>
<td>audi'verīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'vererītis</td>
<td>monu'erītis</td>
<td>rē'xerītis</td>
<td>cē'perītis</td>
<td>audi'verītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'verint</td>
<td>monu'erīnt</td>
<td>rē'xerīnt</td>
<td>cē'perīnt</td>
<td>audi'verīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in § 187. 2–4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of dō, portō, dēleō, moveō, habēō, dīcō, discēdō, faciō, veniō, mūniō.
195. The Perfect Active Infinitive. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj.</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>amāvis'īse, to have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>monuis'īse, to have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>(a) rēx-</td>
<td>rēxis'īse, to have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) cēp-</td>
<td>cēpis'īse, to have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audīv-</td>
<td>audīvis'īse, to have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>fu-</td>
<td>fuis'īse, to have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of dō, portō, dēleō, moveō, habeō, dīcō, discēdō, faciō, veniō, mūniō.

196. EXERCISES


II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (sing. and plur.). 4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (sing. and plur.). 6. I have given, you had moved (sing. and plur.), we had said. 7. You will have made (sing. and plur.), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey the oracle? He did.

1 ex. What would ab mean? 2 Did . . . obey, perfect tense. 3 What case?
LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

197. A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE} & \\
\text{Present} &= \text{First of the principal parts} \\
\text{Imperfect} &= \text{Present stem + -ba-m} \\
\text{Future} &= \text{Present stem + \{-bō, Conj. I and II\}} \\
\text{Perfect} &= \text{Third of the principal parts} \\
\text{Pluperfect} &= \text{Perfect stem + -era-m} \\
\text{Future Perfect} &= \text{Perfect stem + -erō}
\end{align*}
\]

198. The synopsis of the active voice of amō, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

**Principal Parts amō, amāre, amāví**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pres. Stem} & \quad \text{amā-} \\
\text{Perf. Stem} & \quad \text{amāv-} \\
\text{Indic.} & \\
\text{Pres. amō} & \\
\text{Imperf. amābam} & \text{Indic.} \\
\text{Fut. amābō} & \text{Pluperf. amāveram} \\
\text{Pres. Imv. amā} & \text{Fut. perf. amāverō} \\
\text{Pres. Infin. amāre} & \text{Perf. Infin. amāvisse}
\end{align*}
\]

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of parō, dō, laudō, déleō, habeō, moveō, pāreō, videō, dicō, discēdō, dūcō, mittō, capiō, mūniō, veniō.\(^1\)

199. Learn the following principal parts: \(^2\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pres. Indic.} & \quad \text{Pres. Infin.} & \quad \text{Perf. Indic.} \\
\text{Irregular Verbs} & \\
\text{sum} & \text{esse} & \text{fui} & \text{be} \\
\text{ab'sum} & \text{abes'se} & \text{ā'fui} & \text{be away} \\
\text{dō} & \text{dare} & \text{dedī} & \text{give}
\end{align*}
\]

\(^1\) Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number. \(^2\) These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.
200. **Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.


---

1 See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage. 2 The verb pugnātur means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought, or the contest rages*. The verb pugnō in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.
LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE - THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

201. The fourth and last of the principal parts (§ 183) is the perfect passive participle. From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ.</th>
<th>PRES. INDIC.</th>
<th>PRES. INFIN.</th>
<th>PERF. INDIC.</th>
<th>PERF. PASS. PART.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amā'-re</td>
<td>amā'y-i</td>
<td>amā't-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo'neō</td>
<td>monē'-re</td>
<td>mo'nū-i</td>
<td>mo'nit-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>re'ge-re</td>
<td>rēx-i</td>
<td>rēct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>ca'piō</td>
<td>ca'pe-re</td>
<td>cēp-i</td>
<td>capt-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>au'diō</td>
<td>audī'-re</td>
<td>audī'y-i</td>
<td>audī't-us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle.

202. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb to be and the past participle; as, I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved.

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of sum as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

Perfect passive, amā'tus sum, I have been or was loved
Pluperfect passive, amā'tus eram, I had been loved
Future perfect passive, amā'tus erō, I shall have been loved

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of moneō, regō, capiō, and audiō, and give the English meanings.

203. Nature of the Participle. A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it
is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

204. The perfect passive participle is declined like bonus, bona, bonum, and in the compound tenses (§ 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

**Examples in Singular**

- Vir laudātus est, the man was praised, or has been praised
- Puella laudāta est, the girl was praised, or has been praised
- Cōnsilium laudātum est, the plan was praised, or has been praised

**Examples in Plural**

- Virī laudāti sunt, the men were praised, or have been praised
- Puellae laudātae sunt, the girls were praised, or have been praised
- Cōnsilia laudāta sunt, the plans were praised, or have been praised

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, and audiō (§§ 488–492).

205. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the perfect passive participle; as, amā’t-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been loved; mo’nit-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been advised.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of regō, capiō, audiō, and give the English meanings.

206. The future active infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding -ūrus, -a, -um to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of amō is amāt-ū’rus (-a, -um) esse, to be about to love.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

- Present, amāre (present stem), to love
- Perfect, amāvisse (perfect stem), to have loved
- Future, amātūrus esse (participial stem), to be about to love

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of laudō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō, with the English meanings.
207. EXERCISES


II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS
YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

208. The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in -ūrus, which appears in the principal parts instead.

IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>esse</th>
<th>fui</th>
<th>fūurus</th>
<th>be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abssum</td>
<td>abesse</td>
<td>āfui</td>
<td>āfūurus</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō ♂</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>ődē</td>
<td>datus</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 dō is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short a in the present and participial stems.
# REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

## Conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portō</td>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>portāvī</td>
<td>portātus</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

## Conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contineō</td>
<td>continēre</td>
<td>continuī</td>
<td>contentus</td>
<td>hold in, keep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>dēlēre</td>
<td>dēlēvī</td>
<td>dēlētus</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docēō</td>
<td>docēre</td>
<td>docuī</td>
<td>doctus</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egeō</td>
<td>egēre</td>
<td>eguī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>lack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favēō</td>
<td>favēre</td>
<td>fāvī</td>
<td>fautūrus</td>
<td>favor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iubeō</td>
<td>iubēre</td>
<td>iussī</td>
<td>iussus</td>
<td>order</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movēō</td>
<td>movēre</td>
<td>mōvī</td>
<td>mōtus</td>
<td>move</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noceō</td>
<td>nocēre</td>
<td>nocuī</td>
<td>nocitūrus</td>
<td>injure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>pārēre</td>
<td>pāruī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>obey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuādeō</td>
<td>persuādēre</td>
<td>persuāsi</td>
<td>persuāsus</td>
<td>persuade [from restrain, keep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibeō</td>
<td>prohibēre</td>
<td>prohibuī</td>
<td>prohibitus</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondeō</td>
<td>respondeēre</td>
<td>respondī</td>
<td>responsus</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedēō</td>
<td>sedēre</td>
<td>sedī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>be eager</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studēō</td>
<td>studēre</td>
<td>studuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>see</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vīdī</td>
<td>vīsus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Conjugation III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agō</td>
<td>agere</td>
<td>ēgī</td>
<td>āctus</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>crēdere</td>
<td>crēdidī</td>
<td>crēditus</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicō</td>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dīxī</td>
<td>dictus</td>
<td>say</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discēdō</td>
<td>discēdere</td>
<td>discessī</td>
<td>discussus</td>
<td>depart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūxī</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fēcī</td>
<td>factus</td>
<td>make</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugiō</td>
<td>fugere</td>
<td>fūgī</td>
<td>fugitūrus</td>
<td>flee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iaciō</td>
<td>iacere</td>
<td>iēcī</td>
<td>iactus</td>
<td>hurl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interficiō</td>
<td>interficere</td>
<td>interfēcī</td>
<td>interfecctus</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mīsī</td>
<td>missus</td>
<td>send</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapiō</td>
<td>rapere</td>
<td>rapuī</td>
<td>raptus</td>
<td>seize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistō</td>
<td>resistere</td>
<td>restitī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>resist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Conjugation IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mūniō</td>
<td>mūnīre</td>
<td>mūnīvī</td>
<td>mūnitus</td>
<td>fortify</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperiō</td>
<td>reperiēre</td>
<td>rep’peri</td>
<td>repertus</td>
<td>find</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>venīre</td>
<td>vēnī</td>
<td>ventus</td>
<td>come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 faciō has an irregular passive which will be presented later.
209. Prepositions. 1. We learned in §§ 52, 53 that only the accusative and the ablative are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{ā or ab, from, by} & \quad \text{ē or ex, out from, out of} \\
\text{cum, with} & \quad \text{prō, before, in front of; for, in behalf of} \\
\text{dē, down from, concerning} & \quad \text{sine, without}
\end{align*} \]

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the accusative (§ 52). Of these we have had the following:

\[ \text{ad, to; apud, among; per, through} \]

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition in when meaning in or on governs the ablative; when meaning to, into, against (relations foreign to the ablative) in governs the accusative.

210. Yes-or-No Questions. Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like who, why, when, etc., but expecting the answer yes or no, may take one of three forms:

1. Is he coming? (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. Is he not coming? (Expecting the answer yes.)
3. He is n’t coming, is he? (Expecting the answer no.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. Venitne? is he coming?
2. Nōnne venit? is he not coming?
3. Num venit? he is n’t coming, is he?

\[ a. \text{-ne, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.} \]

\[ b. \text{We learned in § 56. b that yes-or-no questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, ita, vērō, certe, etc. (so, truly, certainly, etc.) may be used for yes, and nōn, minimē, etc. for no if the denial is emphatic, as, by no means, not at all.} \]
CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.


II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn’t have the lady’s gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII–XXXVI, §§ 513–516

LESSON XXXVII

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM · THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

212. Learn the principal parts of possum, I am able, I can, and its inflexion in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. § 495.)

a. Possum, I can, is a compound of potis, able, and sum, I am.

213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The infinitive (cf. § 173) is a verbal noun. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.
1. In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding,* and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee.* Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding,* and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is virōs fugere iussit,* *he commanded the men to flee.*

214. Rule. Subject of the Infinitive. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

215. The Complementary Infinitive. In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls.* This is called the *complementary* infinitive, as the predicate is not complete without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are *possum, I am able, I can; properō, mātūrō, I hasten; temptō, I attempt,* as

Rōmānī Gallōs superāre possunt, the Romans are able to
(or can) conquer the Gauls
Bellum gerere mātūrant, they hasten to wage war

a. A *predicate adjective* completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

Malī puerī esse bonī nōn possunt, *bad boys are not able to (or cannot) be good*

Observe that bonī agrees with puerī.

216. The Infinitive used as a Noun. In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer (= conquering) is pleasing; To see (= seeing) is to believe (= believing).* The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with *est,* as

Superāre est grātum, *to conquer is pleasing*
Vidēre est crēdere, *to see is to believe*
EXERCISES

a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

Galbam superāre inimīcōs est grātum multīs, for Galba
to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence superāre est grātum, the predicate adjective grātum is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with superāre the subject.

217. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

218. THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA

Sabīnī olim cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et multās victōriās re-portāverant. Iam agrōs proximōs mūris vāstābant, iam oppidō adpropinquābant. Rōmānī autem in Capitōliōm fūgerant et longē periculō

1 Supply men. nostri, vestri, and sui are often used as nouns in this way.
2 Not children. The Romans used liberī either as an adjective, meaning free, or as a noun, meaning the free, thereby signifying their free-born children. The word was never applied to children of slaves.
3 in with the accusative.
aberant. Mūris validis et saxis altīs crēdēbant. Frūstrā Sabīnī tēla iaciēbant, frūstrā portās durās petēbant; castellum occupāre nōn poterant. Deinde novum cōnsilium cēpērunt. ¹

Tarpēia erat puella Rōmāna pulchra et superba. Cotīdiē aquam 5 cōpiēs Rōmānīs in Capitōlium portābat. Eī ² nōn nocēbant Sabīnī,

quod ea sine armīs erat neque Sabīnī bellum cum fēminīs liberīsque gerēbant. Tarpēia autem maximē amābat ornāmenta aurī. Cotīdiē Sabīnōrum ornāmenta vidēbat et mox ea désiderāre incipiēbat. Eī unus ex ³ Sabīnīs dīxit, "Dūc cōpiās Sabīnās intrā portās, Tarpēia, 10 et maxīma erunt praemia tua.”

¹ cōnsilium capere, to make a plan. Why is the perfect tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph. 
² Dative with nocēbant. (Cf. § 154.) 
³ ex, out of, i.e. from the number of; best translated of.
THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

219. Sentences are simple, compound, or complex.

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: The Romans approached the town.

b. A compound sentence is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: The Romans approached the town and the enemy fled.

Note. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

c. A complex sentence is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: When the Romans approached the town the enemy fled.

Note. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus the enemy fled is independent, and when the Romans approached the town is dependent or subordinate.

d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the main clause and the dependent statement the subordinate clause.

220. Examine the complex sentence

The Romans killed the men who were taken

Here are two clauses:

a. The main clause, The Romans killed the men

b. The subordinate clause, who were taken

The word who is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun men. It also connects the subordinate clause who were taken with the noun men. Hence the clause is an adjective clause. A pronoun that connects an adjective clause with a substantive is called a relative pronoun, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its antecedent. The relative pronouns in English are who, whose, whom, which, what, that.
THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

221. The relative pronoun in Latin is qui, quae, quod, and it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review the declension of is, §114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms qui, quae, and quibus are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive cuius and the dative cui are pronounced cōiˈ Yoós (two syllables) and cōi (one syllable).

222. The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows: ¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>who, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>of whom, whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>to or for whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>whom, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>from, etc., whom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>which, what, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of which, of what, whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to or for which, to or for what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which, what, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, etc., which or what</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. We see from the table above that qui, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of who or by that; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by which, what, or that.

223. Note the following sentences:

The Romans killed the men who were taken
Rōmānī interfēcērunt virōs qui captī sunt

In the first sentence who (qui) refers to the antecedent men (virōs), and is masculine plural. In the second, who (quae) refers to woman (fēminam), and is feminine singular. From this we learn that the relative must agree

¹ This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.
with its antecedent in gender and number. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. Virōs and fēminam are accusatives, and quī and quae are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

224. Rule. Agreement of the Relative. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.

225. Interrogative Pronouns. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are who? which? what? In Latin they are quīs? quid? (pronoun) and quī? quae? quod? (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

a. Who is the man? Quis est vir?
   b. What man is leading them? Quī vir eōs dūcit?

In a, who is an interrogative pronoun. In b, what is an interrogative adjective. Observe that in Latin quīs, quid is the pronoun and quī, quae, quod is the adjective.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective quī, quae, quod is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See § 221.)
   2. The interrogative pronoun quīs, quid is declined like quī, quae, quod in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quīs, who?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius, whose?</td>
<td>cuius, whose?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui, to or for whom?</td>
<td>cui, to or for what or which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem, whom?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō, from, etc., whom?</td>
<td>quō, from, etc., which or what?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting quīs and quid.

228. EXERCISES


II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

229. The Faithless Tarpeia (Concluded) 2

Tarpeia, commōta ōrnāmentīs Sabinōrum pulchris, diū resistere non potuit et respondit: "Date mihi 3 ōrnāmenta quae in sinistris bracchīs geritis, et celeriter cōpiās vestrās in Capitōlium dūcam." Nec

1 cum is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them. 2 Explain the use of the tenses in this selection. 3 to me.
Sabinī recūsāvērunt, sed per dūrās magnāsque castelli portās pro-
perāvērunt quō Tarpēia dúxit et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs
stābant. Tum sine morā in Tarpēiam scūta graviter iēcērunt; nam
scūta quoque in sinistris bracchiis gerēbant. Ita perfida puella Tar-
pēia interflecta est; ita Sabinī Capitōlium occupāvērunt.

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEM S

230. Bases and Stems. In learning the first and second declen-
sions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case
terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we
called the base. If to the base we add -ā in the first declension,
and -o in the second, we get what is called the stem. Thus porta has
the base port- and the stem portā-; servus has the base serv-
and the stem servo-.

These stem vowels, -ā- and -o-, play so important a part in the
formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named
from them respectively the Ā- and O-Decensions.

231. Nouns of the Third Declension. The third declension is called
the Consonant or I-Decension, and its nouns are classified according
to the way the stem ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant,
the word is said to have a consonant stem; if the stem ends in -i-, the
word is said to have an i-stem. In consonant stems the stem is the same
as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.
The presence of the i makes a difference in certain of the cases, so
the distinction is a very important one.

232. Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular.
II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

1 quō = whither, to the place where. Here quō is the relative adverb. We
have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, whither? to what place?
2 upon.
### Class I

233. Stems that add -s to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>princeps, m., chief</th>
<th>miles, m., soldier</th>
<th>lapis, m., stone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. princeps</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. princeps</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. princeps</td>
<td>milite</td>
<td>lapide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular
- **Terminations**
  - M. and F.:
    - -s
    - -is
    - -í
    - -em
    - -e

#### Plural
- **Terminations**
  - M. and F.:
    - -ēs
    - -um
    - -ibus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rex, m., king</th>
<th>iūdēx, m., judge</th>
<th>virtūs, f., manliness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rex</td>
<td>iūdēx</td>
<td>virtūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
<td>virtū’tis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. regi</td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
<td>virtū’tī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. regem</td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
<td>virtū’tem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rege</td>
<td>iūdice</td>
<td>virtū’tē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular
- **Terminations**
  - M. and F.:
    - -s
    - -is
    - -í
    - -em
    - -e

#### Plural
- **Terminations**
  - M. and F.:
    - -ēs
    - -um
    - -ibus

1. The base or stem is found by dropping -is in the genitive singular.
2. Most nouns of two syllables, like princeps (prin’cip-), miles (milit-), iūdēx (iūdic-), have i in the base, but e in the nominative.
EXERCISES

a. lapis is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:
   a. A final -t or -d is dropped before -s; thus miles for mi·let·s, lapis for lap·ids, virtūs for virtūt·s.
   b. A final -c or -g unites with -s and forms -x; thus iū·dec + s = iū·dex, rē·g + s = rē·x.

4. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

In like manner decline dux, ducis, m., leader; eques, equitis, m., horse·man; pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier; pēs, pedis, m., foot.

234. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (i·l·lūd) ship is the Vict·o·ry. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.

NAVIGIUM
LESSON XL

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

CLASS II

235. Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add -s. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

236. **PARADIGMS**

**MASCULINES AND FEMININES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>cōnsul-</th>
<th>legiōn-</th>
<th>ōrdin-</th>
<th>patr-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>ōrdō</td>
<td>pater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
<td>ōrdinis</td>
<td>patris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
<td>ōrdinī</td>
<td>patri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>cōnselem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
<td>ōrdinem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
<td>ōrdine</td>
<td>patre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERMINATIONS M. AND F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -ōn- drop -n- and end in -ō in the nominative, as legiō (base or stem legiōn-), ōrdō (base or stem ōrdin-).

3. Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base or stem patr-).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*
THE THIRD DECLENSION • CONSONANT STEMS

237. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Audisne tubās, Mārce? Non sōlum tubās audiō sed etiam ordīnēs militum et carrōs impedimentorum plēnōs vidēre possum.
2. Quās legiōnēs vidēmus? Eae legiōnēs nūper ex Galliā vēnērunt.
3. Quid ibi fēcērunt? Studēbantne pugnāre an sine virtūte erant?

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (nūper). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained² from wrong.³ 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION • CONSONANT STEMS (Concluded)

238. Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases of Stems</th>
<th>flūmin-</th>
<th>tempor-</th>
<th>oper-</th>
<th>capit-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>head</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular Terminations

Nom. flūmen tempus opus caput
Gen. flūminis temporīs operī capitī
Dat. flūminī temporī operī capitī
Acc. flūmen tempus opus capitē
Abl. flūmine tempore operē capitē

¹ proelium facere = to fight a battle. ² contineō. Cf. § 180. ³ Abl. iniūriā.
EXERCISES

Plural terminations

Nom. flūmina temporā opera capīta -a
Gen. flūminum temporum operum capītum -um
Dat. flūminibus temporibus operibus capītibus -ibus
Acc. flūmina temporā opera capīta -a
Abl. flūminibus temporibus operibus capītibus -ibus

1. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.
2. Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative, as flūmen, base or stem flūmin-.
3. Most bases or stems in -er- and -or- have -us in the nominative, as opus, base or stem oper-; tempor-, base or stem tempor-.

239.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.


II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, “By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster.” 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.
LESSON XLII

REVIEW LESSON

240. Review the paradigms in §§ 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS

Ōlim Cimbrī et Teutōnēs, populi Germāniae, cum fēminis liberīisque Italiae adpropinquāverant et cópiās Rōmānās maximō proeliō vicerant. Ubi fuga legiōnūm nūntiāta est, summus erat terror tōtius Rōmæ, et Rōmānī, graviter commōtī, sacra crēbra deis faciēbant et salūtem petēbant.


1 About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the terror Cimbricus continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter. 2 He made a levy (of troops) upon, imperāvit with the acc. and the dat. 3 Cf. § 200. n. 2.
LESSON XLIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION · I-STEMS

241. To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must
know whether or not it is an i-stem. Nouns with i-stems are
1. Masculines and feminines:
   
a. Nouns in -ēs and -is with the same number of syllables in the genitive
      as in the nominative. Thus caedes, caedis, is an i-stem, but miles, militis,
      is a consonant stem.
   
b. Nouns in -ns and -rs.
   
c. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x preceded by a consonant.

2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

242. The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of con-
sonant stems. Note the following differences:

   a. Masculines and feminines have -ium in the genitive plural and -īs or
      -ēs in the accusative plural.
   
   b. Neuters have -ī in the ablative singular, and an -i- in every form of
      the plural.

243. Masculine and Feminine I-Stems. Masculine and feminine i-
stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>STENS</th>
<th>BASES</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caedes, f., hostis, m., urbs, f., cliens, m.,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slaughter</td>
<td>enemy</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>retainer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>urbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedis</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedi</td>
<td>hosti</td>
<td>urbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedem</td>
<td>hostem</td>
<td>urbem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caede</td>
<td>hoste</td>
<td>urbe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Observe that the vowel before -ns is long, but that it is shortened before
-nt. Cf. § 12. 2, 3.
### THE THIRD DECLENSION - I-STEMS

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>caedes</th>
<th>hostēs</th>
<th>urbēs</th>
<th>clientēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>hostium</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>clientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caēdis, -ēs</td>
<td>hostīs, -ēs</td>
<td>urbīs, -ēs</td>
<td>clientīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TERMINATIONS M. AND F.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>-ēs</th>
<th>-ium</th>
<th>-ibus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clientēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clientium</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. avis, cīvis, finīs, ignīs, nāvis have the ablative singular in -ī or -ē.
2. turris has accusative turrum and ablative turri or turre.

#### 244. Neuter I-Stems.

Neuter i-stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Bases</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insigne, n., decoration</td>
<td>animal, n., animal</td>
<td>calcar, n., spur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animāli-</td>
<td>animāli-</td>
<td>calcāri-</td>
<td>calcār-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insigne</th>
<th>animal</th>
<th>calcar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>-e or —</th>
<th>-is</th>
<th>-ī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>-e or —</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcāris</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcāri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insignia</th>
<th>animālia</th>
<th>calcāria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignium</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>-ia</th>
<th>-ium</th>
<th>-ibus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calcāria</td>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcārium</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review § 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final -i- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to -e.
3. A long vowel is shortened before final -i or -r. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

#### 245. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

1. Quam urbem vidēmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma. 2. Cīvēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altīs et mūrīs longīs mūnīverant.
3. Ventī nāvis longās prohibēbant finibus hoṣtium adpropinquāre.
4. Imperātor a clientibus sui calcāria aurī et alia insignia accēpit.
5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeca gessērunt et eōs caede

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general¹ heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.²

¹ Place first. ² Not the accusative. Why?
**LESSON XLIV**

**IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION**

246.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paradigms</th>
<th>Paradigms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vis, f., force</td>
<td>iter, n., march</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bases vis- and vir-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noms.</th>
<th>vis</th>
<th>iter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>vis (rare)</td>
<td>itineris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>vi (rare)</td>
<td>itineri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noms.</th>
<th>virēs</th>
<th>itinerā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>virīs, or -ēs</td>
<td>itinerā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

247. There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions. The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. **Masculine** are nouns in -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis).
   
a. arbor, tree, is feminine; and iter, march, is, neuter.

2. **Feminine** are nouns in -ō, -īs, -x, and in -s preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but ĕ.
   
a. Masculine are collis (hill), lapis, mēnis (month), orbē, pēs, and nouns in -nis and -gūs — as ignis, sanguis (blood) — and the four monosyllables
dēns, a tooth; mōns, a mountain
pōns, a bridge; fōns, a fountain

3. **Neuters** are nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -ūs, and caput.

---

1 Review § 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.
EXERCISES

248. Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>ablative</th>
<th>vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calamitās</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>nāvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avis</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>ignis</td>
<td>legiō</td>
<td>opus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedere</td>
<td>eques</td>
<td>īnsigne</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>salūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>finis</td>
<td>labor</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>urbs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES

249. First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292...


II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies’ country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers 4 saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence. 1

1 Abl. of manner. 2 suōs, used as a noun, his men. 3 We say buīla a bridge over; the Romans, make a bridge on. 4 Place first.

Fifth Review, Lessons XXXVII–XLIV, §§ 517–520
LESSON XLV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION - i-STEMS

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like bonus, aeger, or liber), or they are of the third declension.

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with i-stems.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, bonus, m.; bona, f.; bonum, n. Such an adjective is called an adjective of three endings. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

I. Adjectives of three endings —
   a different form in the nominative for each gender.

II. Adjectives of two endings —
    masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.

III. Adjectives of one ending —
    masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in -er have three endings; those in -is have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{Singular} & \text{MASC} & \text{FEM.} & \text{NEUT.} & \text{Plural} & \text{MASC.} & \text{FEM.} & \text{NEUT.} \\
\text{Nom.} & \text{äter} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācre} & \text{ācrēs} & \text{ācrēs} & \text{ācria} \\
\text{Gen.} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācris} & \text{āris} & \text{ācrīum} & \text{ācrīum} & \text{ācrium} \\
\text{Dat.} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} \\
\text{Acc.} & \text{ācrem} & \text{ācrem} & \text{ācre} & \text{ācritis, -ēs} & \text{ācritis, -ēs} & \text{ācria} \\
\text{Abl.} & \text{ācī} & \text{ācī} & \text{ācī} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} \\
\end{array}
\]
### CLASS II

#### 255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> omnis</td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> omnis</td>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> omnès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> omni</td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> omnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> omnem</td>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> omnium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> omni</td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> omnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CLASS III

#### 256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> pár</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> parí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> parem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> parí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> parès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> paría</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> parium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parium</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> paribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> paria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and fem.</strong> paribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong> paria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All i-stem adjectives have -i in the ablative singular.
2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.
3. Decline vir ácer, legió ácris, animal ácre, ager omnis, scútum omne, proelium pár.

#### 257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

1 omnis is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.
EXERCISES

258.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.


II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.
LESSON XLVI

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

260. Masculine nouns end in -us, neuters in -ũ. The genitive ends in -ũs.

a. Feminine by exception are domus, house; manus, hand; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

adventus, m., arrival cornũ, n., horn

bases advent- corn-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>terminations</th>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornũs</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>adventũ (ũ)</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-ũ (ũ)</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>adventum</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>adventũ</td>
<td>cornũ</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
<td>-ũ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cornua</th>
<th>-ũs</th>
<th>-ua</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
<td>-uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>adventuum</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>-ũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>adventũs</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. lacus, lake, has the ending -ibus in the dative and ablative plural; portus, harbor, has either -ibus or -ibu.

3. cornũ is the only neuter that is in common use.

261. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vēlōcēs hostium equitēs ācrem impetum in castra fēcērunt. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō nōn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castris
EXPRESSIOINS OF PLACE


II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (fem.) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar didn’t make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIOINS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF DOMUS

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

   Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat
   Galba ab (dē or ex) oppidō properat
   Galba in oppidō habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

263. Rule. Accusative of the Place to. The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. This answers the question Whither?

264. Rule. Ablative of the Place from. The place from which is expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? (Cf. Rule, § 179.)

265. Rule. Ablative of the Place at or in. The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where?
a. The ablative denoting the place where is called the locative ablative (cf. locus, place).

266. Exceptions. Names of towns, small islands,\(^1\) domus, home, rūs, country, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

Galba Athēnās properat, Galba hastens to Athens
Galba Athēnīs properat, Galba hastens from Athens
Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at (or in) Athens
Galba domum properat, Galba hastens home
Galba rūs properat, Galba hastens to the country
Galba domō properat, Galba hastens from home
Galba rūre properat, Galba hastens from the country
Galba rūrī (less commonly rūre) habitat, Galba lives in the country

a. Names of countries, like Germānia, Italia, etc., do not come under these exceptions. With them prepositions must not be omitted.

267. The Locative Case. We saw above that the place-relation expressed by at or in is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the locative case. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, domī, at home, and a few other words.

268. Rule. Locative and Locative Ablative. To express the place in which with names of towns and small islands, if they are singular and of the first or second declension, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as,

Galba Rōmae habitat, Galba lives at Rome
Galba Corinthī habitat, Galba lives at Corinth
Galba domī habitat, Galba lives at home

\(^1\) Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.
Here Rōmae, Corinthī, and domī are locatives, being singular and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at Athens,
Galba Pompeīiis habitat, Galba lives at Pompeii

Athēnīs and Pompeīiis are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives Athēnāe and Pompeīī are plural and there is no plural locative case form.

269. The word domus, home, house, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§ 468).

270. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.


II. 1. Cæsar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse. 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because they were afraid, others because of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit. 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

1 Latin says "by a swift horse." What construction? 2 Distinguish between the English conjunction because (quia or quod) and the preposition because of (proptēr). 3 used to sit, express by the imperfect.
DAEDALUS ET ICARUS
271. *Daed'alus AND Ic'arus*


**LESSON XLVIII**

**THE FIFTH OR Ė-DECLENSION • THE ABLATIVE OF TIME**

272. Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, *day*, and merīdiēs, *midday*, which are usually masculine.

273. **PARADIGMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diēs, m., <em>day</em></th>
<th>rēs, f., <em>thing</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bases dī-</td>
<td>r-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>reī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>rē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 *And in this place; quō does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a connecting relative, and is translated by and and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.*
I. The vowel e which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending -ei after a consonant, as in r-ēi; and before -m in the accusative singular, as in di-em. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

2. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. Acīēs, line of battle, and spēs, hope, have the nominative and accusative plural.

274. The ablative relation (§ 50) which is expressed by the prepositions at, in, or on may refer not only to place, but also to time, as at noon, in summer, on the first day. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the ablative of time.

275. **Rule. The Ablative of Time.** The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

a. Occasionally the preposition in is found. Compare the English Next day we started and On the next day we started.

276. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Cæsar’s line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Cæsar’s protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast’s teeth.
277. Daed'alus and Ic'arus (Continued)


Lesson XLIX

Pronouns Classified · Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

278. We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. Personal pronouns, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, ego, I; tū, you; is, he. (Cf. § 279, etc.)

2. Possessive pronouns, which denote possession; as, meus, tuus, suus, etc. (Cf. § 98.)

3. Reflexive pronouns, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, he saw himself. (Cf. § 281.)

4. Intensive pronouns, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, I myself saw it. (Cf. § 285.)

5. Demonstrative pronouns, which point out persons or things; as, is, this, that. (Cf. § 112.)

6. Relative pronouns, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, qui, who. (Cf. § 220.)

7. Interrogative pronouns, which ask a question; as, quis, who? (Cf. § 225.)

8. Indefinite pronouns, which point out indefinitely; as, some one, any one, some, certain ones, etc. (Cf. § 296.)

279. The demonstrative pronoun is, ea, id, as we learned in § 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (he, she, it, they, etc.).
280. The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I; nōs, we;* of the second person, *tū, thou or you; vōs, ye or you.* They are declined as follows:

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST PERSON</th>
<th>SECOND PERSON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>tū, you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ego, I</em></td>
<td><strong>tui, of you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td><strong>tibi, to or for you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>meī, of me</em></td>
<td><strong>tē, you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td><strong>tē, with, from, etc., you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mihi, to or for me</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>nēs, us</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mē, me</em></td>
<td><strong>vōbis, with, from, etc., us</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>nēs, with, from, etc., us</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mē, with, from, etc., me</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

| **Nom.** | **vōs, you** |
| *nōs, we* |            |
| **Gen.** | **vestrum or vestrī, of you** |
| *nostrum or nostrī, of us* |        |
| **Dat.** | **vōbis, to or for you** |
| *nōbis, to or for us* |        |
| **Acc.** | **vōs, you** |
| *nōs, us* |            |
| **Abl.** | **vōbis, with, from, etc., you** |
| *nōbis, with, from, etc., us* |      |

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

281. The Reflexive Pronouns. 1. The personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

- *videō mē, I see myself*  
  *vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves*
- *vidēs tē, you see yourself*  
  *vidētis vōs, you see yourselves*

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

**SINGULAR AND PLURAL**

| **Gen.** | **sē** |
| *sui* |        |
| **Dat.** | **sibī** |
| *sibi* |        |
| **Acc.** | **sē** |

**EXAMPLES**

- Puer sē videt, *the boy sees himself*
- Puella sē videt, *the girl sees herself*
- Animal sē videt, *the animal sees itself*
- ἦν sē vident, *they see themselves*

a. The form sē is sometimes doubled, sēsē, for emphasis.
3. Give the Latin for

I teach myself
You teach yourself
He teaches himself
We teach ourselves
You teach yourselves
They teach themselves

282. The preposition cum, when used with the ablative of ego, tū, or sui, is appended to the form, as, mēcum, with me; tēcum, with you; nōbiscum, with us; etc.

283. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us the way? The gods will show you the way.

DAEDALUS AND ICARUS (Concluded)


1 Not accusative. 2 Adverb, see vocabulary. 3 manus ultima, the finishing touch. What literally? 4 Future perfect. Translate by the present.

LESSON L

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN IPSÉ AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE IDÉM

285. Ipse means -self (him-self, her-self, etc.) or is translated by even or very. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. Ipse must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive suī. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while ipse is regularly adjective. Compare

Homō sē videt, the man sees himself (reflexive)
Homō ipse periculum videt, the man himself (intensive) sees the danger
Homō ipsum periculum videt, the man sees the danger itself (intensive)

286. Except for the one form ipse, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§ 108, 109). Learn the declension (§ 481).

287. The demonstrative idem, meaning the same, is a compound of is. It is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. eādēm</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. eius'dem</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ei'dem</td>
<td>ei'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ean'dem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ea'dem</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. From forms like eundem (eum + -dem), eōrunđem (eörum + -dem), we learn the rule that m before d is changed to n.

b. The forms iīdem, iīs'dem are often spelled and pronounced with one ī.
EXERCISES

288. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you? 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

289. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum, ubi in exsilium ab irātīs Rōmānīs ēiectus est, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxiliō petiit. Mox Porsena magnīs cum cōpiīs Rōmam vēnit, et ipsa urbs summō in periculō erat. Omnibus in partibus exercitus Rōmānus victus erat. Iam rēx montem Iāniculum occupāverat. 5 Numquam antea Rōmānī tantō metū tenēbantur. Ex agrīs in urbem properābant et summō studiō urbem ipsam muniēbant.

1 Observe that in Latin we say I and you, not you and I. 2 Not parts, but directions. 3 Cf. § 210. 4 The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay’s well-known poem “Horatius” in his Lays of Ancient Rome. Read the poem in connection with this selection. 5 The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.
LESSON LI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS HIC, ISTE, ILLE

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun is and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use hic, iste, or ille. These demonstratives, like is, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

$$\text{Speaker} \quad \text{hic} \quad \text{iste} \quad \text{ille}$$

*this, he (near); that, he (remote); that, he (more remote)*

a. In dialogue hic refers to a person or thing near the speaker; iste, to a person or thing near the person addressed; ille, to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, § 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

291. Hic is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLAURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Huius is pronounced *hōo'yoös*, and huic is pronounced *hōo'ic* (one syllable).

292. The demonstrative pronouns iste, ista, istud, and ille, illa, illud, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms istud and illud, are declined exactly like ipse, ipsa, ipsum. (See § 481.)
293. **MODEL SENTENCES**

- Is this horse (of mine) strong?  
- That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak  
- Are these (men by me) your friends?  
- Those (men by you) are my friends, but those (men yonder) are enemies

- Estne hic equus validus?  
- Iste equus est validus, sed ille est infirmus  
- Suntne hi amici tuoi?  
- Isti sunt amici mei, sed illi sunt inimici

294. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germanorum dux suos convocavit et hoc modum animos eorum confirmavit. "Vos, qui in his finibus vivitis, in hunc locum convocavi quia mecum debetis istos agros et istas domos ab iniuriis Romanorum liberare. Hoc nobis non difficile erit, quod illi hostes has silvas densas, feras saevas quorum vestigia vident, montes altos timent. Si fortis erimus, deis ipsi nobis viam salutis demonstrabunt. Ille sol, isti oculi calamitatis nostras videreunt." Itaque nomen illius rei publicae Romanae non solum nobis, sed etiam omnibus hominibus qui libertatem amant, est invisum. Ad arma vos voco. Exercete istam incipitam virtutem et vincetis."

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours) sing? 2. This bird (of mine) sings both in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder) in the country don’t sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you) and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours) you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (propter) these deeds (res) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

---

1 The perfect definite. (Cf. § 190.)  
2 English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. § 290.)  
3 both ... and, et ... et.
295. How Horatius held the Bridge (Continued)


LESSON LII

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

296. The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to some person or some thing, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns quis and quī, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of quis or quī and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§ 221, 227.
297. Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis</td>
<td></td>
<td>quid, some one, any one (substantive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>qua or quae</td>
<td>quod, some, any (adjective), § 483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td></td>
<td>aliquid, some one, any one (substantive), § 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliqui</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliquid, some, any (adjective), § 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quidam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
<td>quoddam, quiddam, a certain, a certain one, § 485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam</td>
<td></td>
<td>quicquam or quidquam (no plural), any one (at all) (substantive), § 486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td></td>
<td>quidque, each one, every one (substantive), § 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quodque, each, every (adjective), § 484</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The meanings of the neuters, something, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, quis-forms and quid-forms are mostly used as substantives, qui-forms and quod-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites quis and qui never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after sī, nisi, nē, num (as, sī quis, if any one; sī quid, if anything; nisi quis, unless some one). Generally aliquis and aliqui are used instead.

c. The forms qua and aliqua are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives qui and aliqui respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative qui?

d. Observe that quidam (qui + -dam) is declined like qui, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural m of qui becomes n (cf. § 287. a): quandam, quandam, quorundam, quārundam; also that the neuter has quid- 

dam (substantive) and quoddam (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. Quidam is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. Quisquam and quisque (substantive) are declined like quis.

f. Quisquam, any one (quicquam or quidquam, anything), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective any is ullus, -a, -um (§ 108).
298. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

299. How Horatius Held the Bridge (Concluded)


Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§ 521-523

1 Observe that quīdam and quidem are different words.
LESSON LIII

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

300. The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix -er for the comparative and -est for the superlative; as, positive high, comparative higher, superlative highest. Less frequently we use the adverbs more and most; as, positive beautiful, comparative more beautiful, superlative most beautiful.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

301. Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clārus, -a, -um</td>
<td>clārior, clārius</td>
<td>clāriissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base clār-)</td>
<td>(brighter)</td>
<td>(brightest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis, breve</td>
<td>brevior, brevius</td>
<td>brevissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(short)</td>
<td>(shorter)</td>
<td>(shortest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vēlōx (swift)</td>
<td>vēlōcior, vēlōcius</td>
<td>vēlōcissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base vēlōc-)</td>
<td>(swifter)</td>
<td>(swiftest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding -ior masc. and fem., and -ius neut.; the superlative by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum.

302. Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs magis, more; maximē, most; as, idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

303. Declension of the Comparative. Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. clārior</td>
<td>clārius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. clāriōris</td>
<td>clāriōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. clāriōri</td>
<td>clāriōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. clāriōrem</td>
<td>clārius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. clāriōre</td>
<td>clāriōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare longus, long; fortis, brave; recēns (base, recent-), recent; and decline the comparative of each.

304. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

**Positive**

åcer, åcris, åcre  
(Base åcr-)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum  
(Base pulchr-)

liber, libera, liberum  
(Base liber-)

**Comparative**

åcrior, åcrius  

pulchrior, pulchrius  

liberior, liberius  

**Superlative**

åcerrimus, -a, -um  

pulcherrimus, -a, -um  

liberrimus, -a, -um  

a. In a similar manner compare miser, aeger, crēber.

305. The comparative is often translated by quite, too, or somewhat, and the superlative by very; as, altior, quite (too, somewhat) high; altissimus, very high.

306. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

3. Antiquīs temporibus Germānī erant fortōrēs quam Gallī.  
4. Caesar erat clārior quam inimīcī quī eum necāvērunt.  
5. Quisque scūtum ingēns et pilum longius gerēbat.  
6. Apud barbarōs Germānī erant audācissimi et fortissimi.  
7. Mēns hominum est celerior quam corpus.  
8. Viri aliquārum terrārum sunt miserrimi.  
9. Corpora Germānōrum erant ingentiōra quam Rōmānōrum.  
10. Äcerrimī Gallōrum principēs sine īlla morā trāns flūmen quoddam equōs velōcissimōs tradūxērunt.  
11. Aestāte diēs sunt longōrēs quam biēme.  
12. Imperātor quīdam ab explōrātoribus dē recenti adventū nāvium longārum quaesivit.

II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest.  
2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse.  
3. The Roman name was most

---

1 Why is this word used instead of hostēs?
hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest\(^1\) punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Cæsar.\(^2\) 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general’s friendship.

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

LESSON LIV

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES • THE ABLATIVE
WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT QUAM

307. The following six adjectives in -lis form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, hard</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, like</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, unlike</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

308. From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

Nihil est clārius sōl

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

Nihil est clārius sōle

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter.* This relation is expressed by the separative ablative sōle. Hence the rule

\(^1\) Use the superlative of gravis. \(^2\) Accusative. In a comparison the noun after quam is in the same case as the one before it.
309. **Rule.** Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if quam is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

310. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king’s mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.
LESSON LV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

311. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *good, better, best; many, more, most*. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>———, plús</td>
<td>plurímus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi, -ae, -a, many</td>
<td>plurès, plúra</td>
<td>plurími, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

312. The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

| exterus, -a, -um, outward | (exterior, -ius, outer) | \{ extrémus, -a, -um \} outermost, last |
| inferus, -a, -um, low | inferior, -ius, lower | \{ infimus, -a, -um \} lowest |
| posterus, -a, -um, next | (posterior, -ius, later) | \{ postumus, -a, -um \} last |
| superus, -a, -um, above | superior, -ius, higher | \{ summus, -a, -um \} highest |

313. *Plú, more* (plural *more, many, several*), is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>plúis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>plúritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>plúis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>plúre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. In the singular *plú* is used only as a neuter substantive.*
314. EXERCISES
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

LESSON LVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Concluded) • ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

315. The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>(citimus, hithermost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>(intimus, inmost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propior, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next, nearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

316. In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the measure of difference in height between
Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be *Galba is taller than Sextus by a head*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the ablative of the measure of difference.

\[
\text{Examples:} \begin{align*}
\text{Galba est altior capite quam Sextus} \\
\text{Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.} \\
\text{Illud iter ad Italian est multō brevius} \\
\text{That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)}
\end{align*}
\]

317. **Rule.** Ablative of the Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

a. Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

\[
\begin{align*}
eō, & \text{ by this, by that} \\
hōc, & \text{ by this} \\
multō, & \text{ by much}
\end{align*}
\]

\[\text{nihilō,}^1 \text{ by nothing} \quad \text{paulō, by a little}\]

318. **Exercises**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Caesar’s recent victories.

1 nihil was originally nihilum and declined like pilum. There is no plural.
319. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

320. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cārus, dear</td>
<td>cārior</td>
<td>cārissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cārē, dearly</td>
<td>cārius</td>
<td>cārissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, beautiful</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulcherrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchrē, beautifully</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, free</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē, freely</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberrimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The positive of the adverb is formed by adding -ē to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

*b.* The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

321. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding -īter to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and -ter to the base of those of one ending;¹ as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
<td><em>Adj.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, brave</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortīter, bravely</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx, bold</td>
<td>audācior</td>
<td>audācissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācter, boldly</td>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.
FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 141

322. Case Forms as Adverbs. As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

Adj. facilis, easy primum, first
Adv. facile (acc.), easily primum (acc.), first
primo (abl.), at first

Adj. multus, many plurimus, most
Adv. multum (acc.), much plurimum (acc.), most
multo (abl.), by much

323. Learn the following irregular comparisons:
bene, well melius, better optimē, best
diū, long (time) diūtius, longer diūtissimē, longest
magnopere, greatly magis, more maximē, most
parum, little minus, less minimē, least
prope, nearly, near propius, nearer proximē, nearest
saepe, often saepius, oftener saepissimē, oftenest

324. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them: laetus, superbus, molestus, amicus, ācer, brevis, gravis, recēns.


326. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


1 ille standing after its noun means that well-known, that famous.
8. Rōmānī saepius quam hostēs vicērunt, quod meliōra arma habēbant.
9. Inter omnīs gentīs Rōmānī plurimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortēs simul atque in aequōrem regionem sē recēpērunt, castra sine ullā difficultāte posuērunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier’s death were not true.

LESSON LVIII

NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:
1. Cardinal Numerals, answering the question how many? as, ānus, one; duo, two; etc.
2. Ordinal Numerals, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question in what order? as, primus, first; secundus, second; etc.
3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question how many at a time? as, singuli, one at a time.

328. The Cardinal Numerals. The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, ānus  
2, duo  
3, trēs  
4, quattuor  
5, quīnque  
6, sex  
7, septem  
8, octō  
9, novem  
10, decem  
11, āndecim  
12, duodecim  
13, tredecim  
14, quattuordecim  
15, quīndecim  
16, sēdecim  
17, septendecim  
18, duodēvigintī  
19, āndēvigintī  
20, vīgintī

a. Learn also centum = 100, ducentī = 200, mīlle = 1000.

329. Declension of the Cardinals. Of the cardinals only ānus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mīlle used as a noun, are declinable.
THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

a. ānus is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like nūllus (cf. §§ 109, 470). The plural of ānus is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, ānā castra, one camp; and with other nouns in the sense of only, as, Galli ānī, only the Gauls.

b. Learn the declension of duo, two; trēs, three; and mīlle, a thousand. (§ 479.)

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of bonus; as,

ducentī, -ae, -a

ducentōrum, -ārum, -ōrum

etc. etc. etc.

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

Omnium avium aquila est vēlōcissima
Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest

Hoc ōrācum erat omnium clārissīnum
This oracle was the most famous of all

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a partitive genitive.

331. Rule. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive.

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting mīlle regularly take the ablative with ex or dē instead of the partitive genitive.

b. Mīlle, a thousand, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, mīlle militēs, a thousand soldiers), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, decem mīlia militum, ten thousand soldiers).

Examples:

Fortissimī hōrum sunt Germānī
The bravest of these are the Germans

Decem mīlia hostium interfecta sunt
Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain

Ūna ex captīvis erat soror rēgis
One of the captives was the king’s sister
332. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Cæsar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer⁵ defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.⁶ 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.⁴

LESSON LIX

NUMERALS (Continued) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

333. Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§ 478).
The ordinals are all declined like bonus.

334. The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of bonus.
The first three are

singulī, -ae, -a, one each, one by one
binī, -ae, -a, two each, two by two
ternī, -ae, -a, three each, three by three

335. We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as per plūrimōs annōs, for a great many

¹ Ablative of the measure of difference. ² Not longius. Why? ³ Latin, was distant by a small space. ⁴ Not the accusative.
years; per tētum diēm, for a whole day. Here the space relation is one of extent of time. We could also say per decem pedēs, for ten feet, where the space relation is one of extent of space. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

Vir tētum diēm cucurrīt, the man ran for a whole day
Caesar mūrum decem pedēs mōvit, Caesar moved the wall ten feet

336. Rule. Accusative of Extent. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

a. This accusative answers the questions how long? how far?
b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time how long and the ablative of time when, or within which.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king's death.

337. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.


1 Translate as if pluperfect.
II. 1. Cæsar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (in with acc.) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

LESSON LX

DEPONENT VERBS

338. A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, hortor, I encourage; vereor, I fear. Such verbs are called deponent because they have laid aside (dē-pōnere, to lay aside) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (See §§ 375, 403. b.)

339. The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

Conj. I    hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, encourage
Conj. II   vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
Conj. III (a) sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
(b) patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow
Conj. IV   partior, partīrī, partitus sum, share, divide

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See § 493.) Patior is conjugated like the passive of capiō (§ 492).

340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

ante, before
apud, among
circum, around
contrā, against, contrary to
extrā, outside of
in, into, in, against, upon
inter, between, among
intrā, within
ob, on account of (quam ob rem, therefore)
per, through, by means of
post, after, behind
propter, on account of, because of
trans, across, over

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, § 209.
341. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.


II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Cæsar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far. 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Cæsar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

1 Comparative of longē. 2 Will this be a deponent or an active form?

Seventh Review, Lessons LI-IX, §§ 524-526
PART III

CONSTRUCTIONS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, they must be mastered. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Caesar's campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.

148
LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

342. In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{Present} \\
&\text{Imperfect} \\
&\text{Perfect} \\
&\text{Pluperfect} \\
&\{ \text{Active and Passive} \}
\end{align*}
\]

343. The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, each of them may refer to future time. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

344. The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{|l|l|l|l|l|}
\hline
& \text{Conj. I} & \text{Conj. II} & \text{Conj. III} & \text{Conj. IV} \\
\hline
& \text{Active Voice} & \text{Active Voice} & \text{Active Voice} & \text{Active Voice} \\
\hline
& \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} \\
\hline
& a^\prime \text{mem} & mo^\prime \text{neam} & re^\prime \text{gam} & ca^\prime \text{piam} & au^\prime \text{diam} \\
& a^\prime \text{m\acute{e}s} & mo^\prime \text{ne\acute{a}s} & re^\prime \text{g\acute{a}s} & ca^\prime \text{pi\acute{a}s} & au^\prime \text{d\acute{i}\acute{a}s} \\
& a^\prime \text{met} & mo^\prime \text{neat} & re^\prime \text{g\acute{a}t} & ca^\prime \text{piat} & au^\prime \text{d\acute{i}at} \\
\hline
& \text{Plural} & \text{Plural} & \text{Plural} & \text{Plural} \\
\hline
& a^\prime \text{m\acute{e}s} & mo^\prime \text{ne\acute{a}s} & re^\prime \text{gam} & ca^\prime \text{piam} & au^\prime \text{diam} \\
& a^\prime \text{t\acute{e}s} & mo^\prime \text{ne\acute{a}t} & re^\prime \text{g\acute{a}t} & ca^\prime \text{piat} & au^\prime \text{d\acute{i}at} \\
\hline
& \text{Passive Voice} & \text{Passive Voice} & \text{Passive Voice} & \text{Passive Voice} \\
\hline
& \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} & \text{Singlular} \\
\hline
& a^\prime \text{mer} & mo^\prime \text{near} & re^\prime \text{gar} & ca^\prime \text{piar} & au^\prime \text{diar} \\
& a^\prime \text{t\acute{e}s} & mo^\prime \text{ne\acute{a}s} & re^\prime \text{g\acute{a}t} & ca^\prime \text{piat} & au^\prime \text{d\acute{i}at} \\
& a^\prime \text{t\acute{e}r} & mo^\prime \text{ne\acute{a}t} & re^\prime \text{g\acute{a}t} & ca^\prime \text{piat} & au^\prime \text{d\acute{i}at} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PLURAL
1. amē’mur moneā’mur regā’mur capiā’mur audia’mur
2. amē’mini moneā’mini regā’mini capiā’mini audia’mini
3. amen’tur monean’tur regan’tur capian’tur audian’tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.
b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -ē- in the first conjugation and -ā- in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. §12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.
c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & : & 1. \text{sim} & 1. \text{simus} \\
 & 2. \text{sis} & 2. \text{sitis} \\
 & 3. \text{sit} & 3. \text{sint}
\end{align*}
\]

346. The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared. 1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.
2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a desire or wish, a purpose, a possibility, an expectation, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

**Indicative Ideas**
1. He is brave
   Fortis est
2. We set out at once
   Statim proficiscimur
3. You hear him every day
   Cotidiē eum audīs

**Subjunctive Ideas**
1. May he be brave
   Fortis sit (idea of wishing)
2. Let us set out at once
   Statim proficiscāmur (idea of willing)
3. You can hear him every day
   Cotidiē eum audīās (idea of possibility)
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE COMPARED

4. He remained until the ship arrived
Mānsit dum nāvis pervēnit

5. Caesar sends men who find the bridge
Caesar mittit hominēs qui pontem reperiunt

Subjunctive Ideas

4. He waited until the ship should arrive
Exspectāvit dum nāvis perveni-ret 1 (idea of expectation)

5. Caesar sends men who are to find (or to find) the bridge
Caesar hominēs mittit qui pontem reperiant (idea of purpose)

Note. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy’s fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor’s mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence

Caesar hominēs mittit qui pontem reperiunt, Caesar sends men to find the bridge

The verb reperiunt in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Cæsar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

1 perveni-ret, imperfect subjunctive.
349. **Rule. Subjunctive of Purpose.** The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.

350. A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by
   - qui, the relative pronoun (as above)
   - ut, conj., *in order that, that*
   - quō (abl. of qui, *by which*), *in order that, that*, used when the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative quō expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. § 317.)

II. If something is not wanted, by
   - nē, conj., *in order that not, that not, lest*

351. **EXAMPLES**

1. Caesar *cōpiās cōgīt quibus hostīs īnsequātūr*
   *Caesar collects troops with which to pursue the foe*
2. Pācem petunt ut domum revertantūr
   *They ask for peace in order that they may return home*
3. Pontem faciunt quō facilius oppidum capiant
   *They build a bridge that they may take the town more easily* *(lit. by which the more easily)*
4. Fugiunt nē vulnerentūr
   *They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded*

352. **Expression of Purpose in English.** In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by *that* or *in order that*, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as *We eat to live, She stoops to conquer*. In Latin prose, on the other hand, purpose is never expressed by the infinitive. Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.

353. **EXERCISES**

I.
1. Veniunt ut { dūcant, mittant, videant, audiant,
   dūcantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.
2. Fugimus nē { capiāmur, trādāmur, videāmus,
   necēmur, rapiāmur, resistāmus.
3. Mittit nūntiōs dicant, audiant, veniant, qui nārrent, audiantur, in concilīō sedeant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (acc. with in) that they may not be captured. 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans bravely lest they be destroyed.

LESSON LXIII

INFLΕCTION OF THE IMPERФCT SUBJUNCTIVE
THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rem</td>
<td>monē'rem</td>
<td>re'gerem</td>
<td>ca'perem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'rēs</td>
<td>monē'rēs</td>
<td>re'gerēs</td>
<td>ca'perēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'ret</td>
<td>monē'ret</td>
<td>re'gerēt</td>
<td>ca'perēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rer</td>
<td>monē'rer</td>
<td>re'gerer</td>
<td>ca'perer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'rēris(-re)</td>
<td>monē'rēris(-re)</td>
<td>regerēris(-re)</td>
<td>caperēris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'retur</td>
<td>monē'rētur</td>
<td>regerētur</td>
<td>caperētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā'rēmur</td>
<td>monē'rēmur</td>
<td>regerēmur</td>
<td>caperēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā'rēmini</td>
<td>monē'rēmini</td>
<td>regerēmini</td>
<td>caperēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā'rentur</td>
<td>monē'rentur</td>
<td>regerēntur</td>
<td>caperēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

α. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

1 Not infinitive. 2 Not accusative.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES

355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & \quad 1. \text{ es'sem} & \quad \text{Plur.} & \quad 1. \text{ essē'mus} \\
2. \text{ es'sēs} & \quad 2. \text{ essē'tis} \\
3. \text{ es'sēt} & \quad 3. \text{ es'sent}
\end{align*}
\]

356. The three great distinctions of time are present, past, and future. All tenses referring to present or future time are called primary tenses, and those referring to past time are called secondary tenses. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence He says that he is coming, the principal verb, says, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and is coming, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change he says to he said, — in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character, — I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, He said that he was coming. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called tense sequence, from sequi, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

357. **Table for Sequence of Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Verb in the Indicative</th>
<th>Dependent Verbs in the Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incomplete or Continuing Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SEQUENCE OF TENSES

358. RULE. Sequence of Tenses. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary.

359. EXAMPLES

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittit} & \quad \text{hominës ut agrös vástent} \\
\text{Mittet} & \quad \text{men in order to} \\
\text{Miseric} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields to}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{He sends} & \quad \text{that they may} \\
\text{will send} & \quad \text{in order to} \\
\text{will have sent} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields}
\end{align*}
\]

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mittēbat} & \quad \text{hominës ut agrös vāstārent} \\
\text{Misit} & \quad \text{men in order to} \\
\text{Miserat} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields to}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{He was sending} & \quad \text{that they might} \\
\text{sent or has sent} & \quad \text{in order to} \\
\text{had sent} & \quad \text{lay waste the fields}
\end{align*}
\]

360. EXERCISES

I.

1. Vēnerant ut \{ dūcerent, mitterent, vidērent, audīrent, dūcerentur, mitterentur, vidērentur, audīrentur. \\
2. Fugiēbat nē \{ caperētur, trāderētur, vidētur, necārētur, raperētur, resisteret. \\
3. Misit nūntōs qui \{ dicerent, audirent, venirent, nārārent, audirentur, in conciliō sedērent. \\
4. Castra mūnivērunt \{ sēse défenderent, impetum sustinērent, quō facilius \{ hostis vincerent, salūtem peterent.

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.
LESSON LXIV

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

361. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Subjunctive Active</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈverim</td>
<td>monuˈerim</td>
<td>rēˈxerim</td>
<td>cēˈperim</td>
<td>audiˈverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈveris</td>
<td>monuˈeris</td>
<td>rēˈxeris</td>
<td>cēˈperis</td>
<td>audiˈveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈverit</td>
<td>monuˈerit</td>
<td>rēˈxerit</td>
<td>cēˈperit</td>
<td>audiˈverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈverimus</td>
<td>monueˈrimus</td>
<td>rēxeˈrimus</td>
<td>cēpeˈrimus</td>
<td>audiveˈrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈveritis</td>
<td>monueˈritis</td>
<td>rēxeˈritis</td>
<td>cēpeˈritis</td>
<td>audiveˈritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈverint</td>
<td>monueˈrint</td>
<td>rēxeˈrint</td>
<td>cēpeˈrint</td>
<td>audiveˈrint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect Subjunctive Active</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈvisˈsem</td>
<td>monuisˈsem</td>
<td>rēxisˈsem</td>
<td>cēpisˈsem</td>
<td>audivisˈsem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈvisˈsēs</td>
<td>monuisˈsēs</td>
<td>rēxisˈsēs</td>
<td>cēpisˈsēs</td>
<td>audivisˈsēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈvisˈset</td>
<td>monuisˈset</td>
<td>rēxisˈset</td>
<td>cēpisˈset</td>
<td>audivisˈset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amāˈvisseˈmus</td>
<td>monuissēˈmus</td>
<td>rēxisseˈmus</td>
<td>cēpissēˈmus</td>
<td>audivissēˈmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāˈvisseˈtis</td>
<td>monuissēˈtis</td>
<td>rēxisseˈtis</td>
<td>cēpissēˈtis</td>
<td>audivissēˈtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāˈvisseˈsent</td>
<td>monuissēˈsent</td>
<td>rēxisseˈsent</td>
<td>cēpissēˈsent</td>
<td>audivissēˈsent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.

b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in -m and not in -ō.

c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding -issem, -issēs, etc. to the perfect stem.

d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.
362. The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with sim, the present subjunctive of sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Subjunctive Passive SingulAr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amā’tus sim</td>
<td>mo’nitus sim</td>
<td>rēc’tus sim</td>
<td>cap’tus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā’tus sis</td>
<td>mo’nitus sis</td>
<td>rēc’tus sis</td>
<td>cap’tus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā’tus sit</td>
<td>mo’nitus sit</td>
<td>rēc’tus sit</td>
<td>cap’tus sit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| 1. amā’ti sīmus | mo’niti sīmus | rēc’ti sīmus | cap’ti sīmus | audi’ti sīmus |
| 2. amā’ti sītis | mo’niti sītis | rēc’ti sītis | cap’ti sītis | audi’ti sītis |
| 3. amā’ti sint | mo’niti sint | rēc’ti sint | cap’ti sint | audi’ti sint |

363. The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with essem, the imperfect subjunctive of sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive SingulAr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. amātus essem</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
<td>rēctus essem</td>
<td>captus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amātus essēs</td>
<td>monitus essēs</td>
<td>rēctus essēs</td>
<td>captus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amātus esset</td>
<td>monitus esset</td>
<td>rēctus esset</td>
<td>captus esset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| 1. amātī essēmus | moniti essēmus | rēctī essēmus | captī essēmus | audiūtī essēmus |
| 2. amātī essētis | moniti essētis | rēctī essētis | captī essētis | audiūtī essētis |
| 3. amātī essent | moniti essent | rēctī essent | captī essent | audiūtī essent |

a. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

364. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb sum are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fu’erim</td>
<td>fuis’sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’eris</td>
<td>fuis’sēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’erit</td>
<td>fuis’set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui’erim</td>
<td>fuis’sēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui’eris</td>
<td>fuis’sēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui’erit</td>
<td>fuis’sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
365. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,
   \textit{That the men are afraid} is clear enough (clause as subject)
   \textit{He ordered them to call on him} (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. § 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the \textit{subjunctive} in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

366. \textbf{Rule. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.} A \textit{substantive clause of purpose} with the \textit{subjunctive} is used as the object of verbs of \textit{commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising}, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.

\textbf{EXAMPLES}

1. \textit{The general ordered the soldiers to run} \quad \textit{Imperātor miliitis imperāvit ut current}
2. \textit{He urged them to resist bravely} \quad \textit{Hortātus est ut fortiter resisterent}
3. \textit{He asked them to give the children food} \quad \textit{Petīvit ut liberīs cibum darent}
4. \textit{He will persuade us not to set out} \quad \textit{Nōbis persuādēbit nē proficiscāmur}
5. \textit{He advises us to remain at home} \quad \textit{Monēt ut domī maneāmus}

\textit{a.} The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. § 348.)

367. The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{hortor, urge}
  \item \textit{imperō, order (with the dative of the person ordered and a subjunctive clause of the thing ordered done)}
  \item \textit{moneō, advise}
  \item \textit{petō, quaerō, rogō, ask, seek}
  \item \textit{persuādeo, persuade (with the same construction as imperō)}
  \item \textit{postulō, demand, require}
  \item \textit{suādeo, advise (cf. persuādeo)}
\end{itemize}

N.B. Remember that \textit{iubeō, order}, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. § 213.1.) Compare the sentences

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{Iubeō eum venire}, \textit{I order him to come}
  \item \textit{Imperō eī ut veniat}, \textit{I give orders to him that he is to come}
\end{itemize}
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between *iubeō* and *imperō* in the Latin requires the *infinitive* in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.

368. EXERCISES

I. 1. Petit atque hortātur ut ipse dicat. 2. Caesar Helvētiis imperāvit nē per prōvinciam iter facerent. 3. Caesar nōn iussit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam iter facere. 4. Ille civibus persuāsit ut dē finibus suis discēderent. 5. Caesar princĭpēs monēbit nē proelium committant. 6. Postulāvit nē cum Helvētiis aut cum eōrum sociīs bellum gerent. 7. Ab iīs quaesīvī nē proficerentur. 8. Iis persuādēre nōn potuī ut domi manērent.

II. 1. Who ordered Cæsar to make the march? (Write this sentence both with *imperō* and with *iubeō*) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (*omnia*).

Note. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review § 352.
369. Learn the subjunctive of possum (§ 495), and note especially the position of the accent.

370. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also clauses after verbs of fearing, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by ut. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, nē is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate ut after a verb of fearing by that not, and nē by that or lest.

371. EXAMPLES

| timēō   | veniat |
| timēbō  | ut     |
| timuerō | vēnerit |

I fear, shall fear, shall have feared, that he will not come, has not come

| timēbam | venīret |
| timuī   | ut     |
| timueram | vēnisset |

I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come, had not come

The same examples with nē instead of ut would be translated I fear that or lest he will come, has come, etc.

372. Rule. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or nē (that or lest).
EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar verēbātur ut supplicium captīvōrum Gallis placēret. 2. Rōmānī ipsis magnopere verēbantur nē Helvētīi iter per prōvin- ciam facerent. 3. Timēbant ut satis reī frūmentāriae mitti posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinēre possim. 5. Timuit nē impe- dimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit nē legiōnēs vincerentur. 7. Legiōnēs pugnāre nōn timuērunt. 1

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared 1 to leave the camp.

LESSON LXVI

THE PARTICIPLES

374. The Latin verb has the following Participles: 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>monēns</td>
<td>regēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loving</td>
<td>advising</td>
<td>ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātūrus</td>
<td>monitūrus</td>
<td>rēctūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>love</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td>rule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PASSIVE

| PERFECT | amātus | monitus | rēctus | captus | auditus |
|         | loved, advised, having been | ing been | ing been | taken, having heard, having heard |
|         | loved | advised | ruled | taken | heard |
| FUTURE  | amandus | monēndus | regendus | capiendus | audiendus |
|         | to be | to be | to be | to be | to be |
|         | loved | advised | ruled | taken | heard |

1 Distinguish between what one is afraid to do (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid will take place or has taken place (substantive clause with the subjunctive). 2 Review § 203. 3 The future passive participle is often called the gerundive.
a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding -us to the present stem. In -iō verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of -ē-, as capi-ēns, audi-ēns. It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. § 256.)

amāns, loving

Base amant-

Singular

Masc. and fem. neut.
Nom. amāns amāns
Gen. amantis amantis
Dat. amantī amantī
Acc. amantem amāns
Abl. amantī or -ē amantī or -ē

Stem amanti-

Plural

Masc. and fem. neut.
Nom. amantēs amantia
Gen. amantium amantium
Dat. amantibus amantibus
Acc. amantīs or -ēs amantia
Abl. amantibus amantibus

(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in -ī; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in -e.

(2) In a similar way decline monēns, regēns, capiēns, audiēns.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding -ūrus to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with esse to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. § 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see § 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding -ūdus to the present stem.

e. All participles in -us are declined like bonus.

f. Particiles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

375. Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

Pres. Act. hortāns, urging
Fut. Act. hortāturūs, about to urge
Perf. Pass. (in form) hortātus, having urged
Fut. Pass. (Gerundive) hortandum, to be urged
THE PARTICIPLES

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but active in meaning. No other verbs have a perfect active participle. On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

376. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in -ing; but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, militēs īnsequentēs cēpērunt multōs, the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many. Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary having been; as, audītus, heard or having been heard.

3. The future active participle, translated about to, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review §§ 203, 204, and note the following model sentences:

1. Militēs currentēs erant dēfessī, the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary.

2. Caesar proxfectūrus Rōmam nōn exspectāvit, Cæsar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait.

3. Oppidum captum vīdīmus, we saw the town which had been captured (lit. captured town).

4. Imperātor trīduum morātus profectus est, the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. the general, having delayed) three days, set out.

5. Militēs victi terga nōn vertērunt, the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat.

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (when, since, after, though, etc.), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.
378. Exercises


II.¹ 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy’s country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

Lesson LXVII

The Irregular Verbs volō, nōlō, mālō • The Ablative with a Participle, or Ablative Absolute

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of volō, wish; nōlō (ne + volō), be unwilling; mālō (magis + volō), be more willing, prefer (§ 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. § 354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, volunt venire, they wish to come; volunt amīcōs venire, they wish their friends to come. The English usage is the same.²

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. Magistrō laudante omnēs pueri diligenter labōrānt, with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently.

¹ In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses. ² Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See § 366.)
2. Caesare dúcente nénō prōgredi tīmet, with Caesar leading, or when Caesar leads, or if Caesar leads, or Caesar leading, no one fears to advance.

3. His rēbus cognitis mīlitēs fūgērunt, when this was known, or since this was known, or these things having been learned, the soldiers fled.

4. Proelīō commissō multitī vulnerātī sunt, after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been joined, many were wounded.

a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition with (cf. § 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses attendant circumstance. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a with relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of time (when or after), or one of cause (since), or one of concession (though), or one of condition (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

381. Rule. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.

Note 1. The verb sum has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, tē duce, you (being) leader, with you as leader; patre infirmō, my father (being) weak.

Note 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

a. The Gauls, having been conquered by Caesar, returned home
b. The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, the army returned home

In a the subject is The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, and we translate,

 Galli ā Caesare victī domum revertērunt
EXERCISES

In b the subject is the army. The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

Gallis a Cæsare victis exercitus domum revertit

Note 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. § 375. a) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate Cæsar having encouraged the legions just as it stands, because horter is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say Cæsar having conquered the Gauls, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because vincō is not deponent, and say, the Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar (see translation above).

382. EXERCISES


II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (the rumor having been heard), commanded (imperāre) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (Cæsar, the business having been undertaken), he was unwilling to delay longer.

1 Would the ablative absolute be correct here? 2 Not longius. Why?
LESSON LXVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB FĪŌ • THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

383. The verb fīō, be made, happen, serves as the passive of faciō, make, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from faciō. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§ 500). Observe that the i is long except before -er and in fit.

a. The compounds of faciō with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

Active cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfécī, cōnfectus
Passive cōnficior, cōnficī, cōnfectus sum

384. Observe the following sentences:

1. Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent, the terror was so great that all fled.
2. Terror erat tantus ut nōn facile militēs sēsē recipereant, the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves.
3. Terror fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, terror caused all to flee (lit. made that all fled).

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the consequence or result of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the subjunctive of consequence or result, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb fēcit.

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is ut = so that; negative, ut nōn = so that not.

385. Rule. Subjunctive of Result. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn and have the verb in the subjunctive.

386. Rule. Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about.

387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If
the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by **ut**; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has **nē** and the result clause **ut non**. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as **tam, ita, sic (so)**, and these serve to point them out. Compare

*a. Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur*  
*He was so severely wounded that he was captured*

*b. Graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur*  
*He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

**EXERCISES**


II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken, the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

1 *ita tamen, with such a result however.*  
2 *nē ... quidem, not even.* The emphatic word is placed between.  
3 *Ablative absolute.*
LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION

THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

389. Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. Quis est qui suam domum non amat? who is there who does not love his own home?
2. Erant qui hoc facere nollet, there were (some) who were unwilling to do this.
3. Tū nōn is es qui amīcōs trādās, you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.
4. Nihil videō quod timeam, I see nothing to fear (nothing of such a character as to fear it).

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

Caesar is the man who is leading us, Caesar est qui nōs dūcit
(mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)
Caesar is the man to lead us, Caesar est qui nōs dūcat (descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)

b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as is qui, are translated such a one as to, the man to.

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

These are not the men who did this
These are not the men to do this

390. RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.
391. Observe the sentences

1. Römānī Caesarem cōnsulem fēcērunt, the Romans made Caesar consul.
2. Caesar cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est, Caesar was made consul by the Romans.

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb fēcērunt, made, has two objects: (1) the direct object, Caesarem; (2) a second object, cōnsulem, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the direct object becoming the subject and the predicate accusative the predicate nominative.

392. Rule. Two Accusatives. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.

393. The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

creo, creāre, creāvī, creātus, choose
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make

394. Exercises

I. 1. In Germāniae silvis sunt 1 multa genera ferārum quae reliquis in locis nōn visa sint. 2. Erant 2 itinera duo quibus Helvētīi domō discēdere possent. 3. Erat 1 manus nulla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum praeсидium quod sē armīs défenderet. 4. Tōtō frūmentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmāni Galbam ducem creāvērunt et summā celeritāte profectī sunt. 6. Neque erat 1 tantae multitūdinis quisquam qui morārī vellet. 7. Germānī nōn ī sunt qui adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Cōnsulibus occisis erant qui 2 vellent

1 Remember that when the verb sum precedes its subject it is translated there is, there are, there were, etc. 2 erant qui, there were (some) who. A wholly indefinite antecedent of qui does not need to be expressed.
CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION CUM 171
eum rēgem créāre. 9. Pāce factā erat nēmō qui arma trādere nōllet.
10. Inter Helvētiōs quis erat qui nōbilior illō esset?
II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one 1 to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to 2 betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§ 527-528

LESSON LXX

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION CUM
THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

395. The conjunction cum has the following meanings and constructions:

    cum TEMPORAL = when, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive
    cum CAUSAL = since, followed by the subjunctive
    cum CONCESSIVE = although, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after cum is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. Caesarem vīdī tum cum in Galliā eram, I saw Caesar at the time when I was in Gaul.
2. Caesar in eōs impetum fēcit cum pācem pēterent, Caesar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.
3. Hoc erat difficile cum paucī sine vulneribus essent, this was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.
4. Cum primī ōrdīnēs fūgīssent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōnsistēbant, though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground.

a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. § 389. a). When the cum clause states a fact and simply fixes the time at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, cum in Galliā eram fixes the time when I saw Caesar.

1 A relative clause of characteristic or description. 2 See § 389. 6.
b. On the other hand, when the *cum* clause describes the circumstances under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Caesar made an attack, and the *cum* clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate *cum* by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and *cum* is translated *although*.

396. **Rule.** Constructions with *Cum*. The conjunction *cum* means when, *since*, or although. *It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.*

**Note.** *Cum* in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

397. Note the following sentences:

1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitūdine sed magnum multitūdine hōminum, *the town was small in size but great in population.*
2. Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō, *the man was weak in body but strong in courage.*

*a.* Observe that *magnitūdine, multitūdine, corpore,* and *animō* tell in what respect something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification.*

398. **Rule.** Ablative of Specification. *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

399. **Idioms**

- aliquem certiōrem facere, *to inform some one (lit. to make some one more certain)*
- certior fieri, *to be informed (lit. to be made more certain)*
- iter dare, *to give a right of way, allow to pass*
- obsidēs inter sē dare, *to give hostages to each other*

400. **Exercises**

1. *Helvētii* cum patrum nostrōrum tempore domō prefecti essent, cōnsulis exercitum in fugam dederant. 2. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnin, Helvētii aliōs agrōs petēbant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriōre Galliā esset, tamen dē Helvētiōrum cōnsiliis certior fīebat.

Observe in each case what mood follows cum, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the cum clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (tum cum) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Cæsar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

LESSON LXXI

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE
THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in §§ 510, 511.

402. The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate the sentence

By overcoming the Gauls Caesar won great glory

We can see that overcoming here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in -ing, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the gerund, declined as a neuter of the second declension in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.1 Hence, to

1 Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.
THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

decline in Latin the verbal noun *overcoming*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the gerund for the other cases, as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nom.} & \quad \text{superâre} \{ \text{overcoming} \} \quad \text{INF\textsc{IN\textsc{TIVE}}} \\
\text{Gen.} & \quad \text{superandī}, \text{of overcoming} \\
\text{Dat.} & \quad \text{superandō}, \text{for overcoming} \\
\text{Acc.} & \quad \text{superandum}, \text{overcoming} \\
\text{Abl.} & \quad \text{superandō}, \text{by overcoming}
\end{align*}
\]

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

Superandō Gallōs Caesar magnam glōriam reportāvit

403. The gerund\(^1\) is formed by adding -ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

**Paradigm of the Gerund**

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{CONJ. I} & \text{CONJ. II} & \text{CONJ. III} & \text{CONJ. IV} \\
\text{Gen.} & \text{amandī} & \text{monendī} & \text{regnendī} & \text{capiendī} & \text{audiendī} \\
\text{Dat.} & \text{amandō} & \text{monendō} & \text{regnendō} & \text{capiendō} & \text{audiendō} \\
\text{Acc.} & \text{amandum} & \text{monendum} & \text{regnendum} & \text{capiendum} & \text{audiendum} \\
\text{Abl.} & \text{amandō} & \text{monendō} & \text{regnendō} & \text{capiendō} & \text{audiendō}
\end{array}
\]

a. Give the gerund of cūrō, déleō, sūmō, iaciō, veniō.

b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see § 493). Give the gerund of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

404. The Gerundive. The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§ 374.\(d\)) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say *consilium gerendi bellum*; or we may use the gerundive and say *consilium bellī gerendī*, which means, literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

\(^1\) The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. § 374.\(d\))
405. Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

**Gerund**

Gen. Spēs faciendi pācem
The hope of making peace

Dat. Locus idōneus pugnandō
A place suitable for fighting

Acc. Misit equitēs ad īnsequendum
He sent horsemen to pursue

Abl. Nārrandō fābulās magister puerīs placuit
The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories

**Gerundive**

Spēs faciendae pācis
The hope of making peace

Locus idōneus castrīs pōnedīs
A place suitable for pitching camp

Misit equitēs ad īnsequendōs hostīs
He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy

Nārrandīs fābulīs magister puerīs placuit
The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories

a. We observe

1. That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective.
2. That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object.
3. That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

406. **Rule.** Gerund and Gerundive. I. The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns.

II. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.

407. **Rule.** Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā¹ (= for the sake of), is used to express purpose.

**Gerund**

Ad audiendum vēnērunt or
Audiendī causā vēnērunt
They came to hear

**Gerundive**

Ad urbem videndam vēnērunt or
Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt
They came to see the city

¹ causā always follows the genitive.
THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose,—vénérunt ut audī'ent; vénérunt ut urbem vidē'rent. In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

408. We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, equus Galbae, Galba's horse. If, now, we wish to express the idea the horse is Galba's, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, equus est Galbae. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

409. RULE. Predicate Genitive. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive.

410. IDIOMS

alicui negotium dare, to employ some one (lit. to give business to some one)
novis rébus studère, to be eager for a revolution (lit. to be eager for new things)
rei militáris perítissimus, very skillful in the art of war
sé suaque omnia, themselves and all their possessions

411. EXERCISES


1 Predicate genitive. 2 Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?
II. 1. These ornaments belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 4. Soon the cavalry will come to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle belongs to the general. 7. Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

412. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of eō, go (§ 499).

a. Notice that i-, the root of eō, is changed to e- before a vowel, excepting in iēns, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system -v- is regularly dropped.

413. Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of eō with prepositions:

ad’eō, adī’re, adī’iī, adī’itus, go to, visit, with the accusative
ex’eō, exī’re, exī’iī, exī’itus, go forth, with ex or dē and the ablative of the place from which
in’eō, inī’re, inī’iī, inī’itus, begin, enter upon, with the accusative
red’eō, redī’re, redī’iī, redī’itus, return, with ad or in and the accusative of the place to which
trāns’eō, trānsī’re, trānsī’iī, trānsī’itus, cross, with the accusative

414. Indirect Statements in English. Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

Direct statements

1. The Gauls are brave
2. The Gauls were brave
3. The Gauls will be brave

1 belong to = are of. 2 Use the gerundive with ad. 3 Use the genitive with causā. Where should causā stand? 4 Compare the first sentence. 5 Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.
Indirect statements

1. He says that the Gauls are brave
2. He says that the Gauls were brave
3. He says that the Gauls will be brave

Indirect statements

1. He said that the Gauls were brave
2. He said that the Gauls had been brave
3. He said that the Gauls would be brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction that.
b. The verb is finite (cf. § 173) and its subject is in the nominative.
c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, He said.

415. Indirect Statements in Latin. In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

Direct Statements

1. Galli sunt fortēs
2. Galli erant fortēs
3. Galli erunt fortēs

Indirect Statements

1. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs esse fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to be brave)¹
2. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs fuisset fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to have been brave)¹
3. Dicit or Dixit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortīs (He says or He said the Gauls to be about to be brave)¹

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

a. There is no conjunction corresponding to that.
b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.
c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

416. Rule. Indirect Statements. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.

¹ These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.
417. **Tenses of the Infinitive.** When the sentences in § 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, sunt became esse, erant became fuisse, and erunt became futūrōs esse.

418. **Rule.** Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements. *A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

*Note.* When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

419. **Rule.** Verbs followed by Indirect Statements. *The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.*

420. Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

a. Verbs of saying and telling:

   dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dīctus, say
   negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not
   nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce
   respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, reply

b. Verbs of knowing:

   cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perf.) know
   sciō, scire, scīvī, scītus, know

c. Verbs of thinking:

   arbitrōr, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum, think, consider
   existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, believe
   iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide
   putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think
   spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope

d. Verbs of perceiving:

   audīō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, hear
   sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive
   videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, see
   intellegō, intellegere, intellexī, intellectus, understand, perceive

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.
421. IDIOMS

postrīdiē eius diēī, on the next day (lit. on the next day of that day)
initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
memoriā tenēre, to remember (lit. to hold by memory)
per explōrātōrēs cognōscere, to learn through scouts

422. EXERCISES

I. 1. It, īmus, īte, īre. 2. Eunti, iīse or iīse, ibunt, eunt. 3. Eundī,
ut eant, ibitis, is. 4. Nē irent, i, ibant, ierat. 5. Caesar per explōrā-
tōrēs cognōvit Gallōs flūmen trānsīsse. 6. Rōmāni audīvērunt Helvē-
tiōs initā aestāte dē finibus suīs exitūrōs esse. 7. Lēgātī respondērunt
nēminem ante Caesarem iīlam insula adisse. 8. Principēs Gallōrum
dicunt sē nūllum cōnsiliēm contrā Caesarem imperium initūrōs esse.
9. Arbitrāmur potentiam rēginae esse maiōrem quam cīvium. 10. Rō-
mānī negant sē libertātem Galliēs ēreptūrōs esse. 11. Hīs rēbus cognī-
itīs sēnsimus lēgātōs nōn vēnisse ad pācem petendam./ 12. Helvētīi
sciunt Rōmānōs priōrēs victōriās memoriā tenēre. 13. Sociī cum in-
tellegent multōs vulnerāri, statuērunt in suōs finis redire. 14. Aliquis
nuntiāvit Mārcum cōnsulem creatum esse.

II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be
slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that
the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the
army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The
next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten
miles off. 1. 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to
the queen.

1 to be off, to be distant, abesse. 2 Latin, were of (§ 409).
LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB FERŌ
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in §§ 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb ferō, bear (§ 498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of ferō, bear:

   ad'ferō, ad'fer're, at'tulī, adlā'tus, bring to; report
   con'ferō, con'fer're, con'tulī, conlā'tus, bring together, collect
   dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'tus, bring to; report; grant, confer
   in'ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'tus, bring in, bring against
   re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, bear back; report

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. § 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object. A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. Haec rēs exercitūi magnam calamitātem attulit, this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.
2. Germānī Gallēs bellum īnferunt, the Germans make war upon the Gauls.
3. Hae cōpiēs proelīō nōn intererant, these troops did not take part in the battle.
4. Equitēs fugientibus hostibus occurrunt, the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy.
5. Galba cōpiīs filium praefēcit, Galba put his son in command of the troops.
In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. Rule. Dative with Compounds. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pró, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.

Note 1. Among such verbs are

adferō, adfer're, at'tuli, adlā'tus, bring to; report
ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fui, adfutū'rus, assist; be present
dēferō, dēfer're, dē'tuli, dēlā'tus, report; grant, confer
dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fui, ——, be wanting, be lacking
inferō, infer're, in'tuli, inlā'tus, bring against, bring upon
inter'sum, interes'se, inter'fui, interfutū'rus, take part in
occurrō, occurr'ere, occur'rī, occurr'us, run against, meet
praeficīō, praeficere, praefē'cī, praefec'tus, appoint over, place
in command of
praesum, præes'se, præf'fui, ——, be over, be in command

427. Idioms

graviter or molestē ferre, to be annoyed at, to be indignant
at, followed by the accusative and infinitive
sē conferrre ad or in, with the accusative, to betake one's self to
alicui bellum inferrre, to make war upon some one
pedem referre, to retreat (lit. to bear back the foot)

428. Exercises

I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2. Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tule-
rant. 3. Tulimus, ferēns, lātus esse, ferre. 4. Cum nāvia insulae adpro-
pinquārent, barbarī terrōre commōti pedem referre cōnāti sunt. 5. Gallī
molestē ferēbant Rōmānos agrōs vāstāre. 6. Caesar sociis imperāvit
ne finītimis suīs bellum īnnferent. 7. Explōrātōrēs, qui Caesāri occu-
rērunt, dixērunt exercitum hostium vulneribus dēfessum sēsē in alium
locum contulisse. 8. Hostēs sciēbant Rōmānos frūmentō egēre et
hanc rem Caesāri summum periculum addātūram esse. 9. Impedi-
mentīs in unum locum conlātīs, aliqüī militūm flūmen quod nōn longē

1 But the accusative with ad or in is used with some of these, when the idea of motion to or against is strong.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS  183


II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cæsar’s allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Cæsar’s allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cæsar did not place you in command of the cohort to bring disaster upon the army.

LESSON: LXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in §§ 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. § 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

**Direct Question**

Who conquered the Gauls?

**Indirect Question**

He asked who conquered the Gauls

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as petō, postulō, quaerō, rogō) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. § 420.)

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

**Direct**

Quis Gallōs vincit?

Who is conquering the Gauls?

**Indirect**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a. Rogat quis Gallōs vincat} & \quad \text{He asks who is conquering the Gauls} \\
\text{b. Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret} & \quad \text{He asked who was conquering the Gauls}
\end{align*}
\]

1 Observe that when adferō denotes motion to, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182. 2 Not the infinitive. (Cf. § 352.)
Ubi est Rōma?
Where is Rome?

Caesarne Gallōs vīcit?
Did Caesar conquer the Gauls?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a. Rogat ubi sit Rōma} & \quad \text{He asks where Rome is} \\
\text{b. Rogāvit ubi esset Rōma} & \quad \text{He asked where Rome was}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a. Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vīcerit} & \quad \text{He asks whether Caesar conquered the Gauls} \\
\text{b. Rogāvit num Caesar Gallōs vīcisset} & \quad \text{He asked whether Caesar had conquered the Gauls}
\end{align*}
\]

\[\text{a. The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.}\]
\[\text{b. The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.}\]
\[\text{c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that yes-or-no direct questions (cf. § 210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by num, whether.}\]

432. Rule. Indirect Questions. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence.

433. Idioms

dē tertiā vigiliā, about the third watch
iniūriās alicui înferre, to inflict injuries upon some one
facere verba prō, with the ablative, to speak in behalf of
in reliquum tempūs, for the future

434. Exercises

1. Rēx rogāvit quid lēgātī postulārent et cūr ad sē vēnissent.
in Gallorum conciliō dē armīs trādendīs dictum esset. 10. Moneō nē
in reliquum tempus peditēs et equitēs trāns flūmen dūcās.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who
has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who
had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you
go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what
time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys
returned home.

LESSON LXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END
FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in §§ 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:
1. Explōrātōrēs locum castrīs dēlēgērunt, the scouts chose a place for
a camp.
2. Hoc erat magnō impedīmentō Gallīs, this was (for) a great hindrance
to the Gauls.
3. Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castrīs reliquit, he left two legions as (lit. for)
a guard to the camp.

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the purpose or end
for which something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are
castrīs, impedīmentō, and praesidiō. In the second and third sentences we
find a second dative expressing the person or thing affected (Gallīs and
castrīs). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of
for which and to which. (Cf. § 43.)

437. RULE. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to
denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative
denoting the person or thing affected.

438. IDIOMS

cōnsilium omissēre, to give up a plan
locum castrīs dēligēre, to choose a place for a camp
alicui magnō ūsū esse, to be of great advantage to some
one (lit. for great advantage to some one)
EXERCISES


II. 1. I advise you 1 to give up the plan 2 of making war upon the brave Gaels. 2. Do you know 3 where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Cæsar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great 4 that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Cæsar inflicted severe 5 punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

LESSON LXXVI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

440. Review the word lists in §§ 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

(1) A man of great courage, or (2) A man with great courage
(3) A forest of tall trees, or (4) A forest with tall trees

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions of and with.

1 Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. § 366.) 2 Express by the genitive of the gerundive. 3 Indirect question. 4 A clause of result. 5 gravis, -e.
In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar. The prepositions of and with suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

(1) Vir magnae virtūtis, or (2) Vir magnā virtūte
(3) Silva altārum arborum, or (4) Silva altūs arboribus

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, a man of courage, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive and descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

442. EXAMPLES

1. Fossa duodecim pedum, a ditch of twelve feet.
2. Homō magnis pedibus et parvō capite, a man with big feet and a small head.
3. Rēx erat vir summā audāciā or rēx erat vir summae audāciae, the king was a man of the greatest boldness.

443. RULE. Genitive of Description. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.

444. RULE. Ablative of Description. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.

445. RULE. Genitive or Ablative of Description. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.

446. IDIOMS

Helvētiīs in animō est, the Helvetii intend (lit. it is in mind to the Helvetians)
in mātrimōnium dare, to give in marriage
nihil posse, to have no power
fossam perdūcere, to construct a ditch (lit. to lead a ditch through)


II. 1. Cæsar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king’s daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

1 From vis. (Cf. § 468.) 2 Genitives and ablatives of description are adjectival phrases. When we use an adverbial phrase to tell how long or how high or how deep anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. § 336.) For example, in the sentence above multa milia passuum is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying longam. If we should omit longam and say a fortification of many miles, the genitive of description (an adjectival phrase) modifying mūniōnem would be used, as mūniōnem multōrum milium passuum.

[Images of swords]
LESSON LXXVII

REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

448. There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§ 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§ 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§ 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 224).

449. The relation expressed by the genitive is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition of. It is used to express:

1. Possession
   a. As attributive (§ 38).
   b. In the predicate (§ 409).
2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§ 331).
3. Quality or description (§§ 443, 445).

450. The relation expressed by the dative is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions to or for when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express:

   a. With intransitive verbs and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 45).

   b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 154).

   c. With verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dé, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super (§ 426).

2. The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§ 143).
3. The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 437).
The *accusative* case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§ 37).
2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like (§ 392).
3. The subject of the infinitive (§ 214).
4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§ 340).
5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§ 336).
6. The place to which (§§ 263, 266).

**EXERCISES**


II. 1. One of the king’s sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Cæsar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it by a twelve-foot wall.

---

1 What is the force of *quam* with superlatives? 2 *URBS* or *oppidum*, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition. 3 What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive? 4 What mood? (Cf. § 390.) 5 Use the gerund or gerundive. 6 Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet.*
LESSON LXXVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

453. The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions with (or by), from (or by), and in (or at). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

I. Ablative rendered with (or by):
   1. Cause (§102)
   2. Means (§103)
   3. Accompaniment (§104)
   4. Manner (§105)
   5. Measure of difference (§317)
   6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§381)
   7. Description or quality (§§444, 445)
   8. Specification (§398)

II. Ablative rendered from (or by):
   1. Place from which (§§179, 264)
   2. Ablative of separation (§180)
   3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§181)
   4. Comparison without quam (§309)

III. Ablative rendered in (or at):
   1. Place at or in which (§§265, 266)
   2. Time when or within which (§275)

454. EXERCISES


II. i. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cæsar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect yourself from these enemies. 8. After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

LESSON LXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

455. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§ 402, 406.1).

456. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§ 406.2).

457. The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§ 216).

b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§ 215).

c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of wishing, commanding, forbidding, and the like (§ 213).

1 longius, too far. (Cf. § 305.) 2 Latin, by ten thousands of paces.

3 défendere. 4 Ablative absolute.
II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of saying and mental action. The subject is in the accusative (§§ 416, 418, 419).

458. The subjunctive is used:
1. To denote purpose (§§ 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (§§ 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§ 390).
4. In cum clauses of time, cause, and concession (§ 396).
5. In indirect questions (§ 432).

459. EXERCISES


II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cāesar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cāesar would pursue them. 6. Cāesar asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts to choose a place for a camp.

1 quaeere ab. 2 Not infinitive. 3 Use the gerundive with ad.
READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

**How to Translate.** You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words in the same order as the Latin words. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
   a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
   b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
   c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
   d. **Make sense.** If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.

6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.
The Parts of a Sentence. You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence The idle boy does not study, the word idle is an adjective. In The boy wasting his time does not study, the words wasting his time form an adjective phrase modifying boy. In the sentence The boy who wastes his time does not study, the words who wastes his time form an adjective clause modifying boy, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called subordinate conjunctions. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.
HERCULES
THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyæ. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurytheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband’s love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband’s garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

LIII. THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Di² grave supplicium sūmunt dē malis, sed it qui lēgibus³ deōrum pārent, etiam post mortem cūrantur. Illa vita dis² erat grātissima quae hominibus miserīs ūtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiōrum summum erat immortālitās. Illud praemiō Herculī datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, māter Alcmēna, et omnium hominum validissimus fuisset dicitur. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, eum, adhūc

¹ This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read. ² Di and dis are from deus. Cf. § 468. ³ lēgibus, § 501. 14.
infantem, interficere studēbat; nam ei\textsuperscript{1} et\textsuperscript{2} Herculēs et Alcmēna erant invisī. Itaque misit duās serpentes, utramque saevissimam, quae mediā nocte domum\textsuperscript{3} Alcmēnae vēnerunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum frātre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingenti dormiēbat. Iam audācēs serpentes 5 adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre commōtus, magnā vōce mātrem vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingenti serpenti manibus suīs rapuit et interfēcit.

LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ

Herculēs ā puerō\textsuperscript{4} corpus suum gravissimis et difficillimis labōribus exercēbat et hoc modō virēs\textsuperscript{5} suās cōnfirmāvit. Iam adulēscēns Thēbis\textsuperscript{6} habitābat. Ibi Creōn quidam erat rēx. Minyae, gēns valē dissima, erant fīmitimi Thēbānīis, et, quia ālim Thēbānōs vicerant, quotannis lēgātōs mittēbant et vectigal postulābant. Herculēs autem ĉōnstituit civis suōs hoc vectigali liberāre et dixit, rēgi, "Dā mihi exercitum tuum et ego hōs superbōs hostis superābō." Hanc con- 15 dicionem rēx nōn recūsāvit, et Herculēs nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dimisit et cōpiās coēgit.\textsuperscript{7} Tum tempore opportūnissimō proelium cum Minyis commisit. Diū pugnātum est, sed dēnique illī impetum Thēbānōrum sustinēre nōn potuērunt et terga vertērunt fugamque cēpērunt.

HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creōn rēx, tantā victōriā laetus, filiam suam Herculī in mātrimōnium dedit. Thēbis Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vivēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābātur; sed post multōs annōs subitō\textsuperscript{8} in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcit. Post breve tempus\textsuperscript{9} ad sānitātem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et ĉōnstituit ad ōrāculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem ārāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat femīna quaedam quae Pythia appellābātur. Ea cōnsilium dabat īs qui ad ōrāculum veniēbant.

1 ei, to her, referring to Juno. 2 et... et, both... and. 3 domum, § 501.20. 4 a puerō, from boyhood. 5 virēs, from vis. Cf. § 468. 6 Thēbis, § 501.36.1. 7 coēgit, from cōgō. 8 in furōrem incidit, went mad. 9 ad sānitātem reductus, lit. led back to sanity. What in good English?
LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS
HE STRANGLES THE NEMEAN LION

Itaque Herculeis Pythiae tōtam rem dēmōnstrāvit nec scelus suum abdīdit. Ubi iam Herculeis finem fēcit, Pythia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntham discēdere et ibi rēgi Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae ubi audivit, Herculeis ad illum urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servitūtem trādidit et dixit, "Quid prīnum, Ō rēx, mē facere iūbēs?"

HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT

SLAYING THE LERNEAN HYDRA

"et pārēbō imperiō\(^1\) tuō." Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fecit. Mox feram vidit et plūris impetus fecit; frūstrā tamen, quod neque sagittās neque ūllō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem suīs ingentibus bracchiis rapuit et faucis eius omnibus viribus compressit. Hōc modō brevī tempore eum interfecit. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umerīs reportāvit et pellem posteā prō\(^2\) veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem qui eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis ingentis accēpērunt, erant laetissimi et Herculem laudābant verbis amplissimis.

LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE'AN HYDRA

Deinde Herculēs ab Eurystheō iussus est Hydram occīdere. Itaque cum amicō Iolāō\(^3\) contendit ad palūdem Lernaeam ubi Hydra incolēbat. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat serpēns ingēns quae novem capita habēbat. Mox is mōnstrum reperīt et summō\(^4\) cum periculō collum eius sinistrā manū rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextrā manū capita novem abscīdere incēpit, sed frūstrā labōrābat, quod quotiēns hoc fēcerat totiēns alīa nova capita vidēbat. Quod\(^5\) ubi vidit, statuit capita ignī cremāre. Hōc modō octō capita dēlēvit, sed extrēmum caput vulnerā-tī nōn potuit, quod erat immortāle. Itaque illud sub ingenti saxō Herculēs posuit et ita victōriam reportāvit.

LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nūntiāta est, summus terror animūm eius occupāvit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē cupīvit tantum virum in rēgnō suō tenēre. Hic autem cervus dicēbatūr aurea cornua et pedēs multō\(^6\) celeriōrēs ventō\(^7\) habēre. Prīnum Herculēs vestigia animālis petīvit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit, omnibus viribus currēre incēpit. Per plurīmos diēs contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per

---

\(^1\) imperiō, § 501. 14.  
\(^2\) prō, for, instead of.  
\(^3\) Iolāō, abl. of I-o-lā'us, the hero's best friend.  
\(^4\) Note the emphatic position of this adjective.  
\(^5\) Quod ubi, when he saw this, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3.  
\(^6\) multō, § 501. 27.  
\(^7\) ventō, § 501. 34.
CLEANING THE AUGEAN STABLES

atórum annum cücurrerat — ita dicitur — cervum iam défessum cēpit et ad Eurystheum portāvit.

Tum vērō iüssus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere qui illō tempore agrōs Erymanthīōs vāstābat et hominēs illius locī magnopere perterrēbat. Herculēs laetē negotiōm suscēpit et in Arcadium celeriter sē 5 recēpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculēm vidit, statim quam¹ celerrimē fūgit et metū perterritis in fossam altam sēsē abdidit. Herculēs tamen summā cum difficultāte eum extrāxit, nec aper úllō modō sæsē liberāre potuit, et vīvus ad Eurystheum portātus est.

LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGEAN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS


Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; nam 20 Eurystheus iüsserat eum avis Stymphālidēs occidere. Hae avēs rōstra ferrea habēbant et hominēs miserōs dēvorābant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnīt, lacum vidit in quō avēs incolēbant. Nūllō tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōnstitit.⁶ Dēnique autem avēs ⁷dē aliquā causā perterritae in 25 aurās volāvērunt et magna pars eārum sagittis Herculī occisa est.

¹ quam. What is the force of quam with a superlative? ² Augēās, pronounced in English Aw-je’as. ³ Řlidis, gen. case of Řlis, a district of Greece. ⁴ bōum, gen. plur. of bōs. For construction see § 501.11. ⁵ ingenti stabulō, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say in a huge stable. ⁶ cōnstitit, from cōnsto. ⁷ dē aliquā causā perterritae, frightened for some reason.
CAPTURING THE CRETAN BULL

LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portare vivum ex insulâ Crētâ taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statutes solvit. Postquam trīduum nāvigāvit, incolumis insulae adpropinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regiōnem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ūllo metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit atque cum hāc praedā ex insulā discersit.

HERCULES ET TAURUS

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME'DES

THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gēns Amāzonum\textsuperscript{1} dicitur 2 omnīnō ex mulieribus fuisset. Hae cum viris proelium committere nōn verēbantur. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgina, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidēre filiā Eurysthei̱e̱ vehementer cupiēbat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amāzonēs facere. Ille multōs cum cōpiās nāvem cōnscendit et paucīs diēbus in Amāzonum finīs pervēnit, ac balteum postulāvit. Eum trādere ipsa Hippolytē quidem cupīvit; reliquis tamen Amāzonibus\textsuperscript{3} persuādēre nōn potuit. Postridē Herculēs proelium commīsīt. Multās hūrās utrimque quam fortissimē pugnātum est. Dēnique tamen mulierēs terga vertěrunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.\textsuperscript{10} Multae autem captae sunt, in quō numerō erat ipsa Hippolytē. Herculēs postquam balteum accēpit, omnibus captīvis libertātem dedit.

THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS

Iamque unus modo ē duodecim labōribus relinquēbātur sed inter omnīs hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum\textsuperscript{4} ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Ex Orcō autem nēmō anteā reverterat. Prae-tereā Cerberus erat mōnstrum maxīmē horribile et tria capita habēbat. Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dēscendit. Ibi vērō nōn sine summō periculō Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingenti cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit.

Sic duodecim labōres illī\textsuperscript{5} intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Dēnum post longam vitam Herculēs ā deīs receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dēdit immortālītātem.

\textsuperscript{1} A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.  
\textsuperscript{2} omnīnō, etc., to have consisted entirely of women.  
\textsuperscript{3} Amāzonibus, § 501. 14.  
\textsuperscript{4} The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead.  
\textsuperscript{5} illī, those famous.
P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY

LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPEII

P. Cornēlius Lentulus,2 adulēscēns Rōmānus, amplissimā fāmiliā3 nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux perītissimus, cuius virtūte4 et cōnsiliō multae victōriae reportātae erant; atque māter eius, Iūlia, ā clārissimis maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūri5 Públius nātus est, et cum mātre habitābat in villā quae in maris litore et sub rādīcibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompeii octō milia6 passuum7 aberat. In Italīa antiquā erant plurīrae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnis nūlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mārci Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus mūniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et insulae longē lātēque cōnspici8 ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agri fērācissimi patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cópia et multa ingentiōn arboreum genera quae aestāte9 umbram

1 This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth. 2 A Roman had three names, as, Públius (given name), Cornēlius (name of the gēns or clan), Lentulus (family name). 3 Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32). 4 virtūte, § 501. 24. 5 rūri, § 501. 36. 1. 6 milia, § 501. 21. 7 passuum, § 501. 11. 8 cōnspici, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa. 9 aestāte, § 501. 35.
HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

defessis agricolis gratissimam adserabant. Praeterea erant\(^1\) in agris stabilisque multa animallium genera, non solum equi et boves sed etiam rarae aves. Etiam erat\(^1\) magna piscina plena piscium; nam Romani piscis diligenter colabant.

LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae D̄avus, servus Marc̄i, est vilicus\(^2\) et cum Lesbia uxore\(^5\) omnia curat. Vilicus et uxor in casā humilī, mediis in agrīs sītā, habitant. A prima lūce usque ad vesperum se\(^8\) gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnīs rēs bene gerant.\(^4\) Plūrima enim sunt officia D̄avi et Lesbiae. Vilicus servōs regit nē tardi sint; mittit aliōs qui agrōs arent;\(^4\) aliōs qui hortōs inrigent;\(^4\) et opera in\(^6\) tōtum diem impōnit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestimenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.

Nōn longē ab hōrum casā et in summō colle situm surgēbat domicilium ipsius domīni domīnaeque amplissimum. Ibi plūris annōs\(^6\) Públius cum mātre vitam felicem agēbat; nam pater eius, Marcus, in terris longinquis gravia rei publicae bella gerēbat nec domum\(^7\) revertī poterat. Neque puerō quidem molestum est rūri\(^8\) vivere. Eum multae rēs délectant. Magnopere amat silvās, agrōs, equōs, bovēs, gallinās, avis, reliquaque animālia. Saepe plūris hōrās\(^9\) ad mare sedet quō\(^10\) melius fluctūs et nāvīs spectet. Nec omninō sine comitibus erat, quod Līdia, Dāvi filia, quae erat eiusdem aetātis, cum eō adhuc infante lūdēbat, inter quōs cum annīs amicitia crēscēbat. Līdia nūllum alium ducem déligēbat et Públius ab puellae latere rārō.

---
\(^1\) How are the forms of sum translated when they precede the subject?\(^2\) The vilicus was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce.\(^3\) sē, reflexive pron., object of exercent.\(^4\) For the construction, see § 501. 40.\(^5\) in, for.\(^6\) annōs, § 501. 21.\(^7\) domum, § 501. 20.\(^8\) rūri, § 501. 36. 1.\(^9\) hōrās, cf. annōs, line 17.\(^10\) quō . . . spectet, §§ 349, 350.
discēdēbat. Itaque sub clārō Italiae sōle Públius et Lýdia, amīci fidē-
lissimī, per campōs collisque cotīdiē vagābantur. Modo in silvā fīnitimā
lūdēbant ubi Públius sagittis\(^1\) celeribus avis dēiciēbat et Lýdia corōnis
variōrum flōrum comās suās ornābat; modo aquam et cibum portābant
ad Dāvum servōsque dēfessōs qui agrōs colēbant; modo in casā parvā
aut hōrās laetās in lūdō cōnsūmēbant aut auxiliōm dabant Lesbiae,
quae cibum virō et servis parābat vel aliās rēs domestīcās agēbat.

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS,
IS SHIPWRECKED. JULIA RECEIVES A
LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Públius\(^2\) decem annōs habēbat cum M. Cornēlius Lentulus, pater
eius, quī quīnque annōs\(^3\) grave bellum in Asiā gerēbat, nōn sine glōriē
domum\(^4\) revertēbātur. Namque multa secunda proelia fēcerat, maximās
hostium cópiās dēlēverat, multās urbēs populō\(^5\) Rōmānō inimicās cēperat.
Prīnum nūntius pervēnit quī à Lentulō\(^6\) missus erat\(^7\) ut profectīōnem
suam nūntiāret. Deinde plūris diēs\(^8\) rēditum virī optimi māter filiūsque
exspectābant et animīs\(^9\) sollicitōs deōs immortālis frūstrā colēbant. Tum
dēmum hās litterās summō cum gaudīo accēpērunt:

\(^{10}\) "Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dicit. Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō.
Ex Graeciā, quō\(^{11}\) praeter spēm et opiniōnem hodiē pervēnī, hās litterās
ad tē scribō. Namque nāvis nostra frācta est; nōs autem—\(^{12}\) dis est
grātia—incolumēs sumus. Ex Asiā\(^{13}\) portū nāvem lēnī ventō solvi-

Postquam \(^{14}\) altum mare tenuimus\(^{15}\) nec iam īllae terrae appāru-
ērunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subitō magna tempestās
cortā est et nāvem vehementissimē adflīxīt. Ventis fluctūsque

\(^{1}\) sagittis, § 501. 24.  \(^{2}\) was ten years old.  \(^{3}\) annōs, § 501. 21.  \(^{4}\) domum,
§ 501. 20.  \(^{5}\) populō, dat. with inimicās, cf. § 501. 16.  \(^{6}\) Lentulō, § 501. 33.
\(^{7}\) ut... nūntiāret, § 501. 40.  \(^{8}\) diēs, cf. annōs, l. 9.  \(^{9}\) animīs, abl. of manner.
Do you see one in line 15?  \(^{10}\) This is the usual form for the beginning of a
Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression Si valēs, etc.
The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing,
if not previously mentioned in the letter.  \(^{11}\) quō, where.  \(^{12}\) dis est grātia,
thank God, in our idiom.  \(^{13}\) Asia refers to the Roman province of that name
in Asia Minor.  \(^{14}\) altum mare tenuimus, we were well out to sea.  \(^{15}\) nec
iam, and no longer.
adstrictātī nec sōlem discernere nec cursum tenère poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs2 et trīs noctīs3 sine rēmis vēlisque agimur. Quārtō diē5 primum terra visa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē à litore aberant, dēiectī sumus. Tum vērō maiōra pericula timēbāmus; sed nauta quidam, vir fortissimus, ī sē nāve in fluctūs irātōs dēsiluit 4ut fūnem ad litus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vīx effēcit. Ita omnēs servāti sumus. Grātiās īgitur et honōrem Neptūnō dēbēmus, quī deus nōs ē periculō ēripit. Nunc Athēnīs5 sum, quō cōnfugi ut mihi paucās hōras ad quītem darem.6 Quam primum autem aliam nāvem condūcam ut īter ad 10 Itāliam reliquum cōnāciam et homēm7 ad meōs cārōs revertanī. Sālutā nostrum Pūblium amicissīmē et valētūdinem tuam cūrā diligenter. 

Kalendis Mārtiis."

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēli Lentulī portum Mīsenī8 petītī, qui portus nōn longē à Pompēiīs situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmāna 15 pōnēbātur et ad pugnās nāvālis orbētātur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōspicī poterant. Iamque incrēdībīli celeritāte nāvis longā quā Lentiulus vehēbātur litorī adpropinquāvit; nam nōn sōlum ventō sed etiam rēmis impellēbātur. In altā pepsi stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliqui militēs Rōmāni cum armis splendīdis, inter quōs clārissimus erat 20 Lentulus. Deinde servi rēmis contedere cessāvērunt10, nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iēcērunt. Lentulus statīm ē nāvī ēgressus est et 11 ad villam suam properāvit. Eum Iūliā, Pūblius, tōtāque familia excēpērunt. 12 Quī complexūs, quanta gaudia fuērunt!

Postridiē eius diē Lentulus filiō suō dixit, "Venī, mi Pūblī, mēcum. 25

1 adstrictātī, perf. passive part. tossed about. 2 What construction? 3 diē, § 501. 35. 4 ut . . . portāret, § 501. 40. 5 Athēnīs, § 501. 36. 1. 6 darem, cf. portāret, l. 6. 7 Why not ad domum? 8 Kalendis Mārtiis, the Calends or first of March; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter. 9 Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy. 10 Why is the infinitive used with cessāvērunt? 11 See Plate I, Frontispiece. 12 Observe that these words are exclamatory.

Tum celeriter currum cōnscentērunt et ad urbīs mūrōs vectī sunt. Stabiana portā³ urbem ingressi sunt. Pūblius strātās viās mīrātur et saxa altīōra quae in mediō disposita erant et altās orbitās quās rotae inter haec saxa fēcerant. Etiam strēpitum mīrātur, multitūdinem, carōrōs, fontis, domōs, tabernās, forum⁴ cum statuīs, templīs, reliquisque aedificiis publicīs.

LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII


Brevi tempore⁵ omnia erant parāta, iamque⁶ quīnta hōra erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad caupōnam properāvērunt, quod famē⁷ et

---

¹ What construction follows suādet? § 501. 41. ² rēbus, § 501. 32. ³ This is the abl. of the way by which motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (saxa quae in mediō disposita erant). ⁴ The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map. ⁵ We say, this kind of shop; Latin, this kind of shops. ⁶ ut...parārumus, § 501. 41. ⁷ How is ut translated after a verb of fearing? How nē? Cf. § 501. 42. ⁸ tempore, § 501. 35. ⁹ quīnta hōra. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts. ¹⁰ famē shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending -ē is long.
sitis urgebantur. Ibi sub arboris umbra sedebant et puerō imperāvērunt ut sibi cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperiō puere celeriter pāruit. Tum laetū se ex labore refēcērunt.


LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON


1 sitis, thirst, has -im in the acc. sing., -i in the abl. sing., and no plural. 2 Observe that the reflexive pronoun sibi does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called indirect use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose. 3 What case? Cf. § 501. 14. 4 sē, cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note. 5 Pompeīs, § 501. 36. 1. 6 nihil ... verītī sunt, had no fears of the mountain. 7 in, for. 8 rē vérā, in fact. 9 vereor ut, § 501. 42. 10 occāsū, § 501. 35. 11 purē ... poterat, freely, could speak Latin well. What is the literal translation? 12 Enniun, the father of Latin poetry. 13 duodecim ... habēbat, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note. 14 virum, etc., a very well-educated and worthy man. Observe the Latin equivalent. 15 quī ... docēret, a relative clause of purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350. 16 In Caesar's time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.
filii, discēbant. Nam saepe apud Römānōs mōs erat nōn in lūdum filiōs mittere sed domī per magistrum docēre. Cotidiē discipuli cum magistrō in peristylē Mārcī domūs sedēbant. Omnēs puerī bullam auream, originis honestae signum, in collō gerēbant, et omnēs togā praetextā amīctī erant, quod nōndum sēdecim annōs nāti sunt.

SCENE IN SCHOOL · AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

Discipuli. Salvē, magister.

Magister. Vōs quoque omnēs, salvēte. Tabulāsne portāvistis et stilōs?

D. Portāvimus.


Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ūvam dēpendentem vidit. Ad ūvam salībat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem irāta erat et salire cessāns dixit: " Illa ūva est acerba; acerbam ūvam nihil moror."

Omnia'ne scripistis, puerī?

D. Omnia, magister.

1 filii, in apposition with puerī. 2 nōn . . . mittere. This infinitive clause is the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, domī . . . docēre. The object of docēre is filiōs understood.

3 The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade. 4 At the age of sixteen a boy layd aside the bulla and the toga praetexta and assumed the toga virilis or manly gown. 5 annōs, § 501. 21. The expression nōndum sēdecim annōs nāti sunt means literally, they were born not yet sixteen years. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?

6 Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections. 7 Aesōpī, the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world. 8 A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox. 9 Ancient books were written on rolls made of papy'rus. 10 nihil moror, I care nothing for.
LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

Iamque Públius, 

1 quīndecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. 2 prīmis . . . cōnfectīs, abl. abs. Cf. § 501. 28. 3 patriō, dat. with persuāsit. 4 omnibus . . . comparātīs, cf. note 2. 5 vectī, perf. pass. part. of vehō. 6 What is there peculiar about the gender of this word? 7 Nōlai, locative case, § 501. 36. 2. 8 viā, cf. portā, p. 208, l. 7, and note. 9 What construction? 10 Eō, adv. there. 11 Postrīdiē eius diēī, on the next day. 12 viam Appiam, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow. 13 Formiās, Formīa, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans. 14 itinere . . . factō, abl. abs. The gen. milium modifies itinere. 15 equis relictīs. What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.
sita, ab urbe Rōmā sēdecim mīlia passuum abest. Inde dēclīvis via ūsque ad lātum campum dūcit ubi Rōmā stat. Quem ad locum ubi Pūblius vēnit et Rōmam adhūc remōtam, maximam tōtius orbis terrārumb urbem, cōnspēxit, summā admirātiōne et gaudīō adfectus est. 5 Sine morā dēscendērunt, et, mediō intervallō quam celerrīmē superātō, urbem portā Capēnā ingressi sunt.

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS

Pūblius iam tōtum annum Rōmae morābātur1 multaque urbī spectācula viderat et multōs sībi2 amīcos parāverat. Eī3 omnēs favēbant; 4dē eō omnēs bene spērāre poterant. Cotidiē Pūblius 10 scholās philosophōrum et grammaticōrum tantō studiō frequentābat 6ut alīs clārum exemplum praebebēt. 7 Saepe erat cum patre in cūriā8; quae rēs effecit 7ut summōs rēi publicae virōs et audiret et vidēret. Ubi 8sēdecim annōs nātus est, 15 bullam9 auream et togam praetextam mōre Rōmānō dēposuit atque virīlem togam sūmpsit. Virīlis autem toga erat omnīnō alba, sed praetexta clāvum purpureum in margine habēbat. 10 Dēpōnere togam praetextam et sūmere togam virīlem erat rēs grātissīma puerō Rōmānō, quod posteā vir et civis Rōmānūs habēbat.


1 morābātur, translate as if pluperfect. 2 sībi, for himself. 3 Eī, why dat. 4 dē . . . poterant, in English, all regarded him as a very promising youth; but what does the Latin say? 5 ut . . . praebebēt, § 501. 43. 6 cūriā, a famous building near the Roman Forum. 7 ut . . . audiret et vidēret, § 501. 44. 8 sēdecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. 9 bullam, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4. 10 These infinitive clauses are the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. 11 Hīs rēbus gestīs, i.e. the assumption of the toga virīlis and attendant ceremonies. 12 Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206. 13 surrēxi, from surgō.

LXIX. Públius joins Cæsar's army in Gaul


1 The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily. 2 qui ... dēducerent, § 350. 3 magnā, great things, a neuter adj. used as a noun. 4 aequālibus, § 501. 34. 5 Ĉūrā ut valeās, take good care of your health. How does the Latin express this idea? 6 Abl. of means. sē, reflexive object of exercuit. 8 qui ... praedicerent, § 501. 45. 9 ita multum trahēbat, had a great influence in that direction. 30 Paucis ante annīs, a few years before; in Latin, before by a few years, ante being an adverb and annīs abl. of degree of difference. 11 ut ... faceret, § 501. 41. 12 ut, how translated here? See § 501. 42.
pervenire potuit. Intrà munitionès acceptus, à Caesare benignè exceptus est. Imperàtor fortem adultèscendentem amplissimès verbis laudàvit et eum tribunum militum creàvit.

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus qui in hostium finibus bellum gerit multìs periculis circumdatus est. Quae pericula ut vitàrent, Romání summam curam adhibère solèbant. Adpropinquantès còpiis hostium agmen ita dispònèbant ut imperàtor ipse cum pluribus légionibus expeditís primum agmen duceret. Post eàs còpiàs impedimenta totius exercitus

1 The military tribune was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility. Quae pericula, object of vitàrent. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence. ut ... duceret, § 501. 43. expeditís, i.e. without baggage and ready for action. impedimenta. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless expeditus) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.
conlocábant. 1 Tum légionēs quae proximē conscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs quoque in omnēs partēs dimittēbantur qui loca explōrarent; et centuriōnēs præemittēbantur ut locum castrēs idōneum dēlígerent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castrēs 2 qui facile défendi posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra8 in colle 5 ab utrāque parte arduō, a fronte lēniter dēclivī sape pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdībus cinctus vel in flūminis rīpis situs dēligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnīt, aliī militum 4 in armīs erant, aliī castra mūniere incipiēbant. Nam 6 quō tūtiōrēs ab hostibus militēs essent, nēve incauti et imparāti opprimerentur, castra fossilā lātā et 10 vāllō altō mūniēbant. In castrēs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptīō militum omnēs in partēs fieri posset. In angulis castrōrum erant currēs dē quibus tēla in hostēs coniciēbantur. 6 Tālibus in castrēs quālia descripsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

Illis in castrēs erant duo centuriōnēs,7 fortissimi virī, T. Pullō et 15 L. Vorēnus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte8 cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs inēnsum certāmen gerēbatur. Tum dēnum finis contrōversiae hoc modō9 factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnīt, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiēs coāctīs, ācerrīmum impētum in castra fēcērunt. Tum Pullō, 10 cum Rōmānī tardiōrēs11 vidērentur, 20 "Cūr dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? Quam commodōrem occasīōnem exspectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostrā iūdicābit." Haec12 cum dixisset,


Huic rūrus circumventō auxiliōm dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, pluribus interfecēs, summā cum laude intrā mūnitionēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimicōrum alter alterī auxiliōm dedit nec de eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.

LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

Cum iam sex hōrās pugnātum esset ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs déficērent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, et vāllum scindere fossamque cōmplēre incēpissent. Caesar, vir reī militāris perītissimus,

1 vidēbātur, inrückit. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. § 190. 2 vāllō, abl. of means, but in English we should say within the rampart. Cf. ingenti stabulō, p. 201, l. 13, and note. 3 cōnantis, pres. part. agreeing with eius. 4 ei labōranti, indir. obj. of dat. 5 ā Pullōne, from Pullo, abl. of separation. 6 cupidīus, too eagerly. 7 pede sē fallente, lit. the foot deceiving itself; in our idiom, his foot slipping. 8 pugnātum esset, déficērent, instārent, incēpissent. These are all subjunctives with cum. Cf. § 501. 46.

LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY · ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar letterīs certior fīebat et per explōrātōrēs cognōscēbat plurīs civitātēs Galliae novīs rēbus studēre, et contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sé dare, atque cum his Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniunctūrōs esse. His litterīs nūn-tiisque commōtus Caesar cōnstituit quam celerrīmē in Gallōs proficīscī, ut eōs inopinantis opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legionibus peditum et duōbus milibus equītum in Germānōs mittere.

1 intermittere, ērumperent. What use of the subjunctive? 2 Quod, etc., they do as ordered. The antecedent of quod is id understood, which would be the object of faciunt. 3 ut . . . darētur. Is this a clause of purpose or of result? 4 coniciendi, § 402. 5 comminus gladiōs pugnātum est, a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords. 6 multitudine suōrum, by their numbers. suōrum is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression? 7 Id imperātor. Id is the obj. and imperātor the subj. of animadvertisset. 8 labō-rantibus. This participle agrees with ēs understood, the indir. obj. of daret; qui . . . daret is a purpose clause, § 501. 40. 9 hostēs, subj. of potuērunt. 10 Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after certior fīebat, he was informed, and cognōscēbat, he learned. Cf. § 501. 48, 49. 11 inter sé, to each other. 12 proficīscī, mittere. These infinitives depend upon constituit.
1 Itaque ré frumentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque² rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finīs pervēnit ut spatium³ cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur⁴; et Labiēnus dē Germānīs tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus ⁵ Gallis auxilium dare audēret.⁴

Hoc iter in Germāniam Pūblius quoque fēcit et, ⁶cum ibi morārētur, multa mirābilia vidit. Praesertim vērō ingentem silvam mirābātur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dicēbātur ⁶ut nēmō eam trānsīre posset, nec quīquam scīret aut initium aut finem. Quā dē rē plūra cognō-

10 verat ā milite quōdam quī olim captūs ā Germānīs multōs annōs ibi incoluit. Ille⁷ dē silvā dīcēns, "Infinitae magnitudinis est haec silva," inquit; "nec quisquam est ⁸huius Germāniae ⁹quī initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nāscuntur illīc multa tālia animālia genera qualia reliquis in locīs nōn inveniuntur. Sunt bovēs qui ūnūm¹⁰ cornū habent; sunt etiam animālia quae multās ādierunt alēs. Hae nūllōs crū-

15 rum¹¹ articulōs habent. Itaque, si forte concīderunt, sēsē ērigere nūllō modō possunt. Arborēs habent prō¹² cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicānt atque ēa reclinātēs quiētem capiunt. Tertium est ēorum qui ērī appellantur. Hi sunt paulō minōrēs elephantis.¹³ Magna vis ēorum ²⁰ est et magna vēlōcitās. Neque homīnī neque ferāe parcut.¹⁴"

**LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY**

Pūblius plūris diēs in Germāniā morātus¹⁶ in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra sē contulit. Ille quia molestē ferēbat Gallōs¹⁶ eius regiōnis obsidēs dare recūsāvīsse et exercitū frumentū praebēre

¹ Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen
days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he
carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what
he could find by foraging. ² Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33. ³ cōpiās
cōgendī, § 501. 37. ¹. ⁴ darētur, audēret, § 501. 45. audēret is not from audīo.
⁵ cum ... morārētur, § 501. 46. ⁶ ut ... posset, ... scīret, § 501. 43. ⁷ Ille, 
subj. of inquit. ⁸ huius Germāniae, of this part of Germany. ⁹ quī ... 
sciat ... adierit, § 501. 45. ¹⁰ ūnūm, only one. ¹¹ crūrum, from crūs.
¹² prō, for, in place of. ¹³ elephantis, § 501. 34. ¹⁴ parcut. What case is 
used with this verb? ¹⁵ morātus. Is this part. active or passive in meaning?
¹⁶ Gallōs, subj. acc. of the infinit. recūsāvīsse and nōluisse. The indirect state-
ment depends upon molestē ferēbat.
noluisse, constituit eis bellum inferre. Agris vâstäris, vicis incensis, pervenit ad oppidum validissimum quod et nâtûrâ et arte mûnitum erat. Cingebâtur mûrō viginti quinque pedès alîto. À lateribus duobus marí mûniëbâtur; à tertio latere collis, in quò oppidum erat situm, praerupto fastigio ad planiorem vergébat; à quartó tantum latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnâre, cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen constituit Caesar. Et castris mûnitis Públió negotium dedit ut rés ad oppugnandum necessâriâs parâret.

Rômânórum autem oppugnatiō est haec. Primum terrēs aedificantur quibus militēs in summum mûrum évâdere possint; vineae fiunt quibus tecti militēs ad mûrum succédant; plutei parantur post quōs militēs tormentâ administrent; sunt quoque arietēs qui mûrum et portâs discutiānt. His omnibus rēbus comparâtis, deinde agger ab eâ parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum

---

1 eis, §§ 501. 15. 2 pedès, § 501. 21. 3 tantum, adv. only. 4 cum... esset, a clause of concession, §§ 501. 46. 5 ad oppugnandum, a gerund expressing purpose. 6 haec, as follows. 7 possint, subjv. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow. 8 vineae. These vineae were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. 9 plutei, large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war. 10 tormenta. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective. 11 The agger, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the agger a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (aries) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)
vineis ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prōmovētur; arietibus qui sub vineis conlocāti erant mūrus et portae discutiuntur; ballistis, catapultis, reliquisque tormentis lapidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrēmō cum iam turris et agger altitūdinem mūri 5 adaequant et arietēs moenia perfrēgērunt,1 signō datō militēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN·THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED


1 perfrēgērunt, from perfringō. 2 oppidi expugnandi. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. § 501. 37. 3 ineant, § 501. 50. 4 ūnus, subj. of inquit. 5 sit. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with ubi stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with ut, that its verb is attracted into the same mood. 6 All these verbs are in the same construction. 7 Hoc cōnsiliō, subj. of placēret. For the order cf. Haec cum, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; Id imperātōr cum, p. 217, l. 8. 8 memoriā, abl. of means. 9 oppidānis, § 501. 15.
THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

pugnātum est. Nê vulnerāti quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, 1dē tertīā vigiliā, Pūblius, quem Caesar īlī operī 2 praefēcerat, nūntiāvit partem 3 mūri ictibus arietis labefactam con-

cidisse. Quā rē au-
ditā Caesar signum
dat; militēs inruunt et magnā cum caede hos-
tium oppidum capiunt.

Postrīdiē eius diēi,
hōcoppidō expugnātō,
4 captivōrum quī nó-
bilissimī sunt ad im-
perātorem ante praet-
ōrium 5 addūcuntur.

Ipse, lōricā aurātā et palūdāmentō purpureō insignis, captivōs per interpretem in hunc modum interrogat: 6 Vōs qui estis 7?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperātor qui sītis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Filī rēgis sumus.

INTERPRES. Dicunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.

IMPERĀTOR. Cūr mihi tantās inūriās intulistis?

INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sībi tantās inūriās intuleritis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Inūriās eī nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus. Semper voluimus Rōmānīs esse amīcī, sed Rōmānī sine causā nōs 25 domō patriāque expellere cōnātī sunt.

INTERPRES. 8 Negant sē inūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum gessisse. 9 Semper sē voluisse amīcōs Rōmānīs esse, sed Rōmānōs sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

---

1 Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided into four watches.  2 operī, § 501. 15.  3 partem, subj. acc. of concidisse.  4 captivōrum ... sunt, the noblest of the captives.  5 The general's headquarters.  6 Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect statements.  7 See Plate III, p. 148.  8 Negant, etc., they say that they have not, etc. Negant is equivalent to dicunt nōn, and the negative modifies intulisse, but not the remainder of the indirect statement.  9 Semper, etc., that they have always, etc.
CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT

IMPERATOR. 1 Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebellionē condōnātā?

Tum vērō captīvi multīs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sē in fidē mānsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolūmis domum dimisit.

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY - THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

5 Nē cōnfectō 2 quidem bellō Gallicō, 3 bellum civile inter Caesarem et Pompēium exortum est. Nam Pompēius, qui summum imperium petēbat, senātūi persuāserat ut Caesarem reī publicae hostem 4 iūdicāret et exercitum eius dimittī iubēret. Quibus cognitis rēbus Caesar exercitum suum dimittere recūsāvit, atque, hortātūs militēs ut ducem totiēns victōrem ab inimīcōrum iniūriās défenderent, imperāvit ut sē Rōman sequerentur. Summā cum alacritātē militēs pāruērunt, et trānsītō Rubicōne 5 initium belli civilis factum est.

Italīae urbēs quidem omnēs ferē 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eum benignē excēpērunt. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adven-

15 tum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium 7 pervēnit, inde 8 paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiās ad Ėpirum mare trān̄sit. Eum Caesar cum seipsum legiōnibus et quīngentīs equītibus secūtus est, et insignis inter Caesaris comitātum erat Pūblius.

Plurībus levīōribus proeliīs factīs, tandem cōpiāe adversae ad Phar-

20 sālum 9 in Thessaliā, sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompēī exercitus

1 Manēbitisne in fidē, will you remain loyal? 2 With nē... quidem the emphatic word stands between the two. 3 The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Cæsar to the lordship of the Roman world. 4 hostem, predicate accusative, § 501. 22. 5 The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Cæsar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Cæsar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Cæsar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C. 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant, favored Cæsar's side. In what case is rēbus? 7 Brundisium, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map. 8 paucīs post diēbus, a few days later; literally, afterwards by a few days. Cf. paucīs ante annīs, p. 213, l. 12, and note. 9 The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.
eset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multi qui veterānās
legiōnēs quae Gallōs et Germānōs superāverant vehementer timēbant.
Quōs1 2ante proielium commissum Labiēnus3 lēgātus, qui ab Caesare
nūper dēfēcerat, ita adlocūtus est: "4Nōlite exišimāre hunc esse
exercitum veterānōrum militum. Omnibus interfū proeliīs5 neque 5
temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs
qui Gallōs superāvit adhuc superest. Magna pars occīsa est, multi
domum dissipērunt, multi sunt relīti in Italīā. Hae cōpiāe quās
vidēitis in 6citeriōre Galliā nūper conscripīae sunt." Haec7 cum diξ-
isset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum esse. 8Hoc 10
idem Pompēius et omnēs reliqui iūrāvērunt, et magnā spē et laetitīā,
sicut certam ad victōriam, cōpiāe e castrīs exiērunt.

Item Caesar, animō9 ad dimicandum parātus, exercitum suum
cēdiēt et septem cohortībus 10praesidiō castrīs relīciis cōpiās triplīci
aciē instrūxit. Tum, militibus studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum 15
dedit. Mīlitēs prōcurrērunt et pilis missis gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque
vērō virtūs hostībus dēfuit. Nam et tēla missa sustinuērunt et impetum
gladiōrum excēpērunt et ordīnēs conservāvērunt. Utrīmque diū et
ācriter pugnātum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum eqūtēs
Pompēi aciem Caesaris circumāre cōnātī sunt. Quod 11 ubi Caesar 20
animadvertit, tertiam aciēm, 12 quae ad id tempus quīēta fuerat, prōcur-
rēre iussīt. Tum vērō integrōrum impetum 13 dēfessī hostēs sustinēre
nōn potuērunt et omnēs terga vertērunt. Sed Pompēius dē fortūnis
suīs dēsperāns sē in castra equō contulit, inde cum paucis
equitūs effūgīt.

1 Quōs, obj. of adlocūtus est. 2 ante proielium commissum, before the begin-
ing of the battle. 3 Labiēnus, Caesar’s most faithful and skillful lieutenant
in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted
Caesar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the
Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends,
and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old
commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain,
45 B.C. 4 Nōlite exišimāre, don’t think. 5 proeliīs, § 501. 15. 6 citeriōre
Galliā. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.
7 Haec, obj. of dixisset. 8 Hoc idem, obj. of iūrāvērunt. 9 animō, § 501. 30.
10 praesidiō castrīs, § 501. 17. 11 Quod, obj. of animadvertit. 12 aciēm, subj.
of prōcurrēre. 13 impetum, obj. of sustinēre.
LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CÆSAR


Imperâtor ipse cum urbem intrâret, undique laetô clâmôre multiûdinis salûtâtus est. Stábât in currû aureô quem quattuor albi equi vehêbant. Indûtus 7 togâ pictâ, alterâ manû habêns et lauream

1 A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors. 2 Quô diè, on the day that, abl. of time. 3 ut... essent, § 501.43. 4 Cum... intrâret, § 501.46. 5 qui... immolârentur, § 501.40. 6 The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions. 7 The toga picta worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p.213.
tenēbat, alterā eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserrimī captīvī, rēgēs principēsque superātārum gentium, catēnīs vincīti, prōgrediēbantur; et vigintī quattuor lictōrēs 1 laureātās fascīs ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Concludīt agmen multitūdō captīvōrum, qui, in servitūtem redāctū, 2 dēmissō vultū, vincītis 3 bracchiis, sequuntur; quibus-cum veniunt longissimō ordinē militēs, etiam hī praedam vel insignia militāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōliō ascendentisset, in templō Iovī Capitōlinō sacra fēcit. 4 Simul captīvōrum quī nōbilissimī erant, abductī in carcerem, 5 interfecī sunt. Sacris factīs Caesar dē Capitōliō dēscendit et in forō militibus suis honōrēs militāris dedit eīisque pecūniam ex bellī praedā distribuit.

His omnibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Pūblius Caesarem 6 valēre iussit et quam celerrimē ad villam contendit ut patrem mātreque salūtāret. 25 Dē rēbus gestīs P. Cornēli Lentulī hāctenus.

1 The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the fāces, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law. 2 dēmissō vultū, with downcast countenance. 3 vincītis, from vincīō. 4 Simul, etc., At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest. 5 The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill. 6 valēre iussit, bade farewell to. 7 This sentence marks the end of the story.
APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

**FIRST DECLENSION** — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae

**SECOND DECLENSION** — O-stems, Gen. Sing. -ī

**THIRD DECLENSION** — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -īs

**FOURTH DECLENSION** — U-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs

**FIFTH DECLENSION** — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ēī

461. **FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>domīnæ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domīnae</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domīnae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominam</td>
<td>-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. Dea and filia have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.*

226
SECOND DECISION  

462.  
SECOND DECISION. 0-STEMS  

a. Masculines in -us  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td></td>
<td>dominī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td></td>
<td>dominīrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dominīrōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td></td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -ē in the vocative singular, as domine.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -ī in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergī'lī, filī.

b. Neuters in -um  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td></td>
<td>pilī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pilī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td></td>
<td>pilōrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pilī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td></td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pilī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td></td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -īī, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in -er and -ir  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>puer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>puerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -er of the second declension have the termination -ē in the vocative singular, as puerē.
### APPENDIX I

#### 463. THIRD DECLENSION

**CLASSIFICATION**

1. **Consonant Stems**
   - I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.
   - II. J-Stems: Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

#### 464. I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. **Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular:** masculines and feminines only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>princeps</strong>, m., chief</td>
<td><strong>miles</strong>, m., soldier</td>
<td><strong>lapis</strong>, m., stone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>princip-</strong></td>
<td><strong>milit-</strong></td>
<td><strong>lapid-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom.       | princēps      | mīles        | lapis        | -s          |
| Gen.       | principis     | mīlitis      | lapidis      | -is         |
| Dat.       | prīncipi      | militī       | lapīdī       | -ī          |
| Acc.       | principem     | mīlitem      | lapidēm      | -em         |
| Abl.       | principe      | militē       | lapide       | -e          |

| Nom.       | principēs     | militēs     | lapidēs      | -ēs         |
| Gen.       | principum     | militum     | lapidum      | -um         |
| Dat.       | prīncipibus   | militibus   | lapidibus    | -ibus       |
| Acc.       | principēs     | militēs     | lapidēs      | -ēs         |
| Abl.       | prīncipibus   | militibus   | lapidibus    | -ibus       |
### THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>singulares</th>
<th>terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>réx</td>
<td>iūdex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>rēgem</td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>rēge</td>
<td>iūdice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>singulares</th>
<th>terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>iūdicum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>rēgibur</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 233. 3.

2. **Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular**

#### a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>singulares</th>
<th>terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 236. 1–3.
APPENDIX I

b. Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases</th>
<th>flūmen, n., river</th>
<th>tempus, n., time</th>
<th>opus, n., work</th>
<th>caput, n., head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>flūmin-</td>
<td>tempor-</td>
<td>oper-</td>
<td>capit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūmine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 238. 2, 3.

II. I-STEMS

a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>caedere, f., slaughter</th>
<th>hostis, m., enemy</th>
<th>urbs, f., city</th>
<th>cliens, m., retainer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STEMS</td>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>urbi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASES</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>urbi-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caedere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caede</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -ē.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.
FOURTH DECLENSION

b. Neuters

\[ \text{insula, n.} \quad \text{animal, n., animal} \quad \text{calcar, n., spur} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insigne</td>
<td>animāli-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animāli-</td>
<td>calcāri-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animāl-</td>
<td>calcār-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>insigne</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insigne</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminations

- e or —
- īs
- ī

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignium</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminations

- ia
- ium
- ibus
- ia
- ibus

466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

adventus, m., arrival  cornū, n., horn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventu-</td>
<td>advent-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventu-</td>
<td>advent-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventu-</td>
<td>advent-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventu-</td>
<td>advent-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>adventūs (ū)</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-ū (ū)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>adventum</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>adventū</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminations

Masc.  Neut.
- us  - ü
- ūs  - ūs
- ū (ū)  - ū
- um  - ū
- ū  - ū

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>adventuum</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
<td>-uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminations

- ūs  - ua
- ūum  - uum
- ibus  - ibus
- ū  - ua
- ibus  - ibus
### 467. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ė-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rēi</td>
<td>-ēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rēi</td>
<td>-ēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 468. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>deus, m., god</th>
<th>domus, f., house</th>
<th>vis, f., strength</th>
<th>iter, n., way</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STEMS</td>
<td>deo-</td>
<td>domu-</td>
<td>vi- and viri-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASES</td>
<td>de-</td>
<td>dom-</td>
<td>v- and vīr-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>deus</th>
<th>domus</th>
<th>vis</th>
<th>iter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>vis (rare)</td>
<td>itineris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domuī, -ō</td>
<td>vī (rare)</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>vīm</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domō, -ū</td>
<td>vī</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>deī, dī</th>
<th>domūs</th>
<th>vīrēs</th>
<th>itinerca</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>deōrum, deum</td>
<td>domuam, -ōrum</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deīs, dīs</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deōs</td>
<td>domōs, -ūs</td>
<td>vīrīs, -ēs</td>
<td>itinera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deīs, dīs</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. The vocative singular of deus is like the nominative.*

*b. The locative of domus is domī.*
### ADJECTIVES

**469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. 0- AND Ā-STEMS**

*a. Adjectives in -us*

**bonus, good** Stems bono- m. and n., bonā- f. Base bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*b. Adjectives in -er*

**liber, free** Stems libero- m. and n., liberā- f. Base liber-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX I

**pulcher, pretty** Stems pulchro- m. and n., pulchrā- f. Base pulchr-

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrulum</td>
<td>pulchrām</td>
<td>pulchrulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrārum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrās</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 470.

**THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES**

**alius, another** Stems alio- m. and n., aliā- f. Base ali-

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alī</td>
<td>alī</td>
<td>alī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alii</td>
<td>aliae</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliius</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
<td>aliārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ūnus, one, only** Stems uno- m. and n., ūnā- f. Base ūn-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ūnus</td>
<td>ūna</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ūnius</td>
<td>ūnius</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
<td>ūnīs</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
<td>ūnam</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. For the complete list see § 108.
### I. THREE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>äcer, äcris, åcre, keen, eager</th>
<th>Stem äcri-</th>
<th>Base äcr-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>fem.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>åcer</td>
<td>åcris</td>
<td>åcre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>åcris</td>
<td>åcris</td>
<td>åcris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>åcri</td>
<td>åcri</td>
<td>åcri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>åcrem</td>
<td>åcrem</td>
<td>åcre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>åcri</td>
<td>åcri</td>
<td>åcri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>fem.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>åcrès</td>
<td>åcrès</td>
<td>åcria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>åcrium</td>
<td>åcrium</td>
<td>åcrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>åcribus</td>
<td>åcribus</td>
<td>åcribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>åcris, -ès</td>
<td>åcris, -ès</td>
<td>åcria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>åcribus</td>
<td>åcribus</td>
<td>åcribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### II. TWO ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>omnis, omne, every, all</th>
<th>Stem omni-</th>
<th>Base omn-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omnès</td>
<td>omnia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omnium</td>
<td>omnium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omnis, -ès</td>
<td>omnia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. ONE ENDING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>pär, equal</th>
<th>Stem pari-</th>
<th>Base par-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pär</td>
<td>pär</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
<td>pär</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>parès</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>parīs, -ès</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td>paribus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -i in the ablative singular.
APPENDIX I

472. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

amāns, loving  STEM amanti-  BASE amant-

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantīs</td>
<td>amantīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantīm</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iēns, going  STEM ienti-, eunti-  BASE ient-, eunt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntīs</td>
<td>euntīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntī</td>
<td>euntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntīm</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

473. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audācior</td>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>brevior</td>
<td>brevius</td>
<td>brevissimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (acıri-)</td>
<td>ācrior</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimus</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

474. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, higher

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>altiōrīm</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Comparative of Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>plús, more</th>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>plúris</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>plúribus</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>plús</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
<th>plüre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plúres</td>
<td>plúria</td>
<td>plúrium</td>
<td>plúrium</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúris</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>melior, melius, better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius, greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>——, plús, more, greater</td>
<td>plúrium, -a, -um, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, old</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>maximus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvenis, -e, young</td>
<td>iúnior</td>
<td>minímus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, veteris, old</td>
<td>vetustior, -ius</td>
<td>veterrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, difficult</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, similar</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exèterus, outèward</td>
<td>exterior, outer, exterior</td>
<td>extrémus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ínferus, below</td>
<td>ínferior, lower</td>
<td>ínfinimus, lowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterus, following</td>
<td>posterior, later</td>
<td>postrèmus, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, above</td>
<td>superior, higher</td>
<td>postumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cis, citrā, on this side]</td>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>citimus, hithermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[in, intrā, in, within]</td>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>intimus, inmost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[præ, prō, before]</td>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prope, near]</td>
<td>proprior, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ultrā, beyond]</td>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, farthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX I

476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**Positive**
cārē (cārus), dearly
miserē (miser), wretchedly
ācriter (ācer), sharply
facile (facilis), easily

**Comparative**
cārius
miserius
ācrius
facilius

**Superlative**
cārissimē
miserimē
ācerrimē
facillimē

477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**Positive**
diuē, long, a long time
bene (bonus), well
male (malus), ill
magnopere, greatly
multum (multus), much
parum, little
saepe, often

**Comparative**
diūtius
melius, better
peius, worse
magis, more
plūs, more
minus, less
saepius

**Superlative**
diūtissimē
optimē, best
pessimē, worst
maximē, most
plurimum, most
minimē, least
saepissimē

478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnum, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

**Cardinals**
(*How many*)

| 1  | ūnum, -a, -um | one |
| 2  | duo, duae, duo | two |
| 3  | trēs, tria | three, etc. |
| 4  | quattuor | etc. |
| 5  | quīnquē | |
| 6  | sex | |
| 7  | septem | |
| 8  | octō | |
| 9  | novem | |
| 10 | decem | |
| 11 | ūndecim | |
| 12 | duodecem | |
| 13 | tredecim (decem (et) trēs) | |
| 14 | quattuordecim | |

**Ordinals**
(*In what order*)

| 1  | prīmus, -a, -um | first |
| 2  | secundus (or alter) | second |
| 3  | tertius | third, etc. |
| 4  | quārtus | |
| 5  | quintus | |
| 6  | sextus | |
| 7  | septimus | |
| 8  | octāvus | |
| 9  | nōnus | |
| 10 | decimus | |
| 11 | ūndecimus | |
| 12 | duodecimus | |
| 13 | tertius decimus | |
| 14 | quārtus decimus | |
### NUMERALS

#### CARDINALS
- 15, quindecim  
- 16, sedecim  
- 17, septendecim  
- 18, duodeviginti (octodecim)  
- 19, undeviginti (novendecim)  
- 20, viginti  
- 21, viginti unus or unus et viginti, etc.  
- 30, triginta  
- 40, quadraginta  
- 50, quinquaginta  
- 60, sexaginta  
- 70, septuaginta  
- 80, octoginta  
- 90, nonaginta  
- 100, centum  
- 101, centum (et) unus, etc.  
- 120, centum (et) viginti  
- 121, centum (et) viginti unus, etc.  
- 200, ducenti, -ae, -a  
- 300, trecenti  
- 400, quadringenti  
- 500, quingenti  
- 600, sescenti  
- 700, septingenti  
- 800, octingenti  
- 900, nongenti  
- 1000, mille

#### ORDINALS
- quintus decimus  
- sextus decimus  
- septimus decimus  
- duodevigensimus  
- undevigensimus  
- vicensimus  
- vicensimus primum or unus et vicensimus, etc.  
- tricensimus  
- quadragensimus  
- quinquagensimus  
- sexagensimus  
- septuagensimus  
- octogensimus  
- nonagensimus  
- centensimus  
- centensimus (et) primum, etc.  
- centensimus vicensimus  
- centensimus (et) vicensimus primum  
- ducentensimus  
- trecentensimus  
- quadringentensimus  
- quingentensimus  
- sescentensimus  
- septingentensimus  
- octingentensimus  
- nongentensimus  
- millensimus

### 479. Declension of duo, two, tres, three, and mille, a thousand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duos or duo</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres or tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of unus cf. § 470.
480. **PERSONAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>nostrum, -trī</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>vestrum, -trī</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>mēhi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tībi</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sībi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that suī is always reflexive.

481. **DEMONSTRATIVE**

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -ĭus and -ī in the gen. and dat. sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ipse, self</strong></th>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>PlURAL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>hic, this (here), he</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>iste, this, that (of yours), he</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RELATIVE PRONOUN

ille, that (yonder), he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is, this, that, he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> eō</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

īdem, the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> īdem</td>
<td>e’adem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> eius’dem</td>
<td>eius’dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> ei’dem</td>
<td>ei’dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> eun’dem</td>
<td>ean’dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> eō’dem</td>
<td>ea’dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

{ī’dem | eae’dem | e’adem}
{eōr’dem | eār’dem | eōr’dem}
{iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem}
{iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem}
{iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem | iī’s’dem}

Note. In the plural of is and īdem the forms with two i’s are preferred, the two i’s being pronounced as one.

482.

RELATIVE

qui, who, which, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> quiū</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> cuius</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> cui</td>
<td>cuie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> quō</td>
<td>quāe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Nom.** quiū      | quae           | quae      |
| **Gen.** cuius     | quae           | quae      |
| **Dat.** cui       | cuie           | cuie      |
| **Acc.** quem      | quam           | quae      |
| **Abl.** quō       | quāe           | quae      |
483.

**INTERROGATIVE**

quis, substantive, who, what

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative adjective qui, quae, quod, is declined like the relative.

484.

**INDEFINITES**

quis and qui, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (some, any). The other indefinites are compounds of quis and qui.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SUBSTANTIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>ADJECTIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quisque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. quique</td>
<td>quique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

485.

quidam, a certain one, a certain

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has quoddam and the substantive quiddam.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quandam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ qua is generally used instead of quae in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>quīdam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quōrun′dam</td>
<td>quārun′dam</td>
<td>quōrun′dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quōsdam</td>
<td>quāsdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
<td>quibus′dam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

486. quisquam, substantive, any one (at all)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quisquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius′quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō quam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

487. aliquis, substantive, some one. aliquī, adjective, some

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliiquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicu′ius</td>
<td>alicu′ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquem</td>
<td>aliiquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquō</td>
<td>aliquō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicu′rum</td>
<td>aliquā′rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ali′quibus</td>
<td>ali′quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquōs</td>
<td>aliquās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ali′quibus</td>
<td>ali′quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. quis (quī), any one, any, is the least definite (§ 297. 6). aliquis (aliquí), some one, some, is more definite than quis. quisquam, any one (at all), and its adjective ullus, any, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.
### Regular Verbs

**First Conjugation. ā-Verbs. Amō**

**Principal Parts**
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus
- Pres. Stem: amā-
- Perf. Stem: amāv-
- Part. Stem: amāt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Active</strong></th>
<th><strong>Indicative Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</td>
<td>I am loved, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāmus</td>
<td>amor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās</td>
<td>amātis</td>
<td>amāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amant</td>
<td>amātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Imperfect</strong></th>
<th>I was loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābām</td>
<td>amābāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>amābātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābat</td>
<td>amābant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th>I shall be loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>amābimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>amābitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>amābunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th>I have been (was) loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>amāvimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvistī</td>
<td>amāvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvit</td>
<td>amāvērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
<th>I had been loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveram</td>
<td>amāverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverās</td>
<td>amāverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverat</td>
<td>amāverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
<th>I shall have been loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverō</td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amem</th>
<th>amēmus</th>
<th>amer</th>
<th>amēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td>amēris, -re</td>
<td>amēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amet</td>
<td>ament</td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>amentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amārem</th>
<th>amāremus</th>
<th>amārer</th>
<th>amāremur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amārēs</td>
<td>amārētis</td>
<td>amārēris, -re</td>
<td>amārēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārēt</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
<td>amārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāverim</th>
<th>amāverimus</th>
<th>amātus, sim</th>
<th>amāti, sit</th>
<th>simus, sitis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>amāti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>sit, sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāvissem</th>
<th>amāvissemus</th>
<th>amātus, essem</th>
<th>amāti, essēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
<td>amāvissētis</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>amāti, essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisset</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>essem, -ae, -a</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amā, love thou</th>
<th>amāre, be thou loved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāte, love ye</td>
<td>amāmini, be ye loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amātō, thou shalt love</th>
<th>amātor, thou shalt be loved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātō, he shall love</td>
<td>amātor, he shall be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātōte, you shall love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amantō, they shall love</td>
<td>amantor, they shall be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>amāre, to love</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amāvisse, to have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>amāns, -antis, loving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um, having been loved, loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>amandi, of loving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amandō, for loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amandum, loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>[amātum], to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>[amātū], to love, in the loving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supine (Active Voice)**

1 Sometimes called the future passive participle.
**489.** SECOND CONJUGATION. Ė-VERBS. MONEÔ

**Principal Parts** moneô, monère, monuí, monitus

**Pres. Stem** monē-  **Perf. Stem** monu-  **Part. Stem** monit-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneô</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>monēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monēnt</td>
<td>monētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Imperfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>monēbāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>I shall be advised, etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
<td>monēberis, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>I have been (was) advised, etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuí</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>monitus, {sum es monītī, sumus }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monuīstīs</td>
<td>-a, -um {est -ae, -a estis }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīt</td>
<td>monuērunt, -re</td>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pluperfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>I had been advised, etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monitus, {eram erās monītī, erāmus }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>-a, -um {erat -ae, -a erātis }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></th>
<th><strong>I shall have been advised, etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerô</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monitus, {erō eris monītī, erimus }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>-a, -um {erit -ae, -a eritis }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Second Conjugation

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneámus</td>
<td>monear</td>
<td>moneámur</td>
<td>monē, advise thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneás</td>
<td>moneáris, -re</td>
<td>moneáris, -re</td>
<td>moneáminí</td>
<td>monēte, advise ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>moneántur</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
<td>monērer</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērès</td>
<td>monērēris, -re</td>
<td>monērēris, -re</td>
<td>monērēminí</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>monērō, thou shalt advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>sis</td>
<td>monērō, he shall advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>monērō, you shall advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monuissecmus</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ess</td>
<td>monērō, they shall advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuissés</td>
<td>monuissētis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monuissēsent</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

- Pres. monēre, to advise
- Perf. monuisse, to have advised
- Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise

### Participles

- Pres. monēns, -entis, advising
- Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise
- Perf. —

### Gerund

- Nom. monendā, of advising
- Gen. monendō, for advising
- Dat. monendō, for advising
- Acc. monendum, advising
- Abl. monendō, by advising

### Supine (Active Voice)

- Acc. monitūm, to advise
- Abl. monitū, to advise, in the advising
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I rule, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I was ruling, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall rule, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I had ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I shall have ruled, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Principal Parts:** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

**Pres. Stem:** rege-

**Perf. Stem:** rēx-

**Part. Stem:** rēct-
### THIRD CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regás</td>
<td>regátis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regerem</td>
<td>regerémus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regerēs</td>
<td>regerētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regeret</td>
<td>regerent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxerim</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLUPERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēxissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisseās</td>
<td>rēxissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisset</td>
<td>rēxisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rege, rule thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regite, rule ye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regitō, thou shalt rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitō, he shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitōte, ye shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reguntō, they shall rule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

**Pres.** regere, to rule
**Perf.** rēxisse, to have ruled

**Fut.** rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule

#### PARTICIPLES

**Pres.** regēns, -entis, ruling
**Fut.** rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule
**Perf.**

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>regendī, of ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regendum, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>[rēctum], to rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>[rēctū], to rule, in the ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX I

491. FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS. AUDIŌ

Principal Parts audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

Pres. Stem audi- Perf. Stem audīv- Part. Stem audīt-

ACTIVE

I hear, etc.

audiō audiīmus
audiēs audiētis
audit audiēunt

INDICATIVE

I was hearing, etc.

audiēbam audiēbāmus
audiēbās audiēbātis
audiēbat audiēbant

I shall hear, etc.

audiām audiēmus
audiēs audiētis
audit audiēunt

I have heard, etc.

audiēvī audiēvīmus
audiēvīstī audiēvīstis
audiēvit audiēvīrunt, -re

FUTURE

I shall be heard, etc.

audiēmar audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, -re audiēbāminī
audiēbātur audiēban’tur

PERFECT

I have been heard, etc.

audiēvī audiēvīmus
audiēvīstī audiēvīstis
audiēvit audiēvīrunt, -re

AUDITUS,
- A, - UM

SUM
SUMUS
ES
AUDITĪ, - A
EST
SUNT

AUDITUS,
- A, - UM

ERAM
ERĀMUS
ERAS
ERĀTIS
ERAT
ERANT

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

audiēverō audiēverīmus
audiēverēs audiēverītis
audiēverēt audiēverīnt

I shall have been heard, etc.

audiēverō audiēverīmus
audiēverēs audiēverītis
audiēverēt audiēverīnt

AUDITUS,
- A, - UM

ERŌ
ERĪMUS
ERIS
ERĪTIS
ERAT
ERUNT

ERĀTIS
ERANT

ERĪT
ERUNT
FOURTH CONJUGATION

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam
audiās
audiat

audīrem
audīrēs
audīret

audīverim
audīveris
audīverit

audīvissem
audīvissēs
audīvisset

IMPERFECT

audiar
audiāris, -re
audiātur

audiēmur
audiēmini
audiēmant

PERFECT

audīrer
audiēris, -re
audiērētur

PLUPERFECT

audīrēmur
audiērēmini
audiērentur

PERFECT

auditus, {sim
-a, -um
-ae, -a

audītī, {sīmus
-sīs
-sit
-sītis

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, hear thou
audite, hear ye

FUTURE

audītō, thou shalt hear
audītō, he shall hear
audītōte, ye shall hear
audīuntō, they shall hear

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire, to hear
Perf. audivisse, to have heard
Fut. auditūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing
Fut. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear
Perf. ———

GERUND

Nom. ———
Gēn. audiendi, of hearing
Dat. audiendō, for hearing
Acc. audiendum, hearing
Abl. audiendō, by hearing

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [auditum], to hear
Abl. [auditā], to hear, in the hearing
### APPENDIX I

#### 492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. **CAPIŌ**

**Principal Parts** capitō, capere, cēpī, captus  
**Pres. Stem** cape-  
**Perf. Stem** cēp-  
**Part. Stem** capt-

##### ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>ca’pior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitīs</td>
<td>ca’peris,-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>ca’pitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiē’bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbā’ris,-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbā’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>ca’piar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētīs</td>
<td>capiē’ris,-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>capiē’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī, cēpīsti, cēpīt, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>captus,-a,-um sum, es,,est, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### PLUPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</td>
<td>captus,-a,-um eram, erās, erat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus,-a,-um erō, eris, erit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capitiam, capiās, capiat, etc.</td>
<td>capiar, -iāris,-re,-iātur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### IMPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.</td>
<td>caperer, -erēris,-re,-erētur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus,-a,-um sim, sis, sit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### PLUPERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.</td>
<td>captus,-a,-um essem, essēs, esset, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### IMPASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPASSIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d Person. capē</td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEPONENT VERBS

FUTURE

2d Pers. capitō capitōte capitor —
3d Pers. capitō capiuntō capitor capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere capī captus, -a, -um esse [captum īri]
Perf. cēpisse —
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, -ientis —
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um
Perf. captūs, -a, -um

GERUND
Gen. capiendī etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice)
Acc. [captum]
Abl. [captū]

493.

DEPONENT VERBS

\[
\text{Principals: } \begin{align*}
\text{I.} & \quad \text{hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge} \\
\text{II.} & \quad \text{vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear} \\
\text{III.} & \quad \text{seuor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow} \\
\text{IV.} & \quad \text{partior, partirī, partitus sum, share, divide}
\end{align*}
\]

Note. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -īō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pres.} & \quad \text{hortor} \quad \text{vereor} \quad \text{sequor} \quad \text{partior} \\
& \quad \text{hortāris, -re} \quad \text{verēris, -re} \quad \text{sequeris, -re} \quad \text{partirīs, -re} \\
& \quad \text{hortātūr} \quad \text{verētūr} \quad \text{sequitur} \quad \text{partītūr} \\
& \quad \text{hortāmūr} \quad \text{verēmūr} \quad \text{sequimūr} \quad \text{partīmūr} \\
& \quad \text{hortāminī} \quad \text{verēminī} \quad \text{sequimīnī} \quad \text{partīminī} \\
& \quad \text{hortantūr} \quad \text{verentūr} \quad \text{sequuntūr} \quad \text{partiuntūr} \\
\text{Impf.} & \quad \text{hortābar} \quad \text{verēbar} \quad \text{sequēbar} \quad \text{partīēbar} \\
\text{Fut.} & \quad \text{hortābor} \quad \text{verēbor} \quad \text{sequar} \quad \text{partiar} \\
\text{Perf.} & \quad \text{hortātūs sum} \quad \text{verētus sum} \quad \text{secūtus sum} \quad \text{partitus sum} \\
\text{Plup.} & \quad \text{hortātūs eram} \quad \text{verētus eram} \quad \text{secūtus eram} \quad \text{partitus eram} \\
\text{F. P.} & \quad \text{hortātūs erō} \quad \text{verētus erō} \quad \text{secūtus erō} \quad \text{partitus erō}
\end{align*}
\]
APPENDIX I

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. horter verear sequar partiar
Impf. hortārer verērer sequerer partīrer
Perf. hortātus sim veritis sim secūtus sim partītus sim
Plup. hortātus esse veritus esse secūtus esse partītus esse

IMPERATIVE

Pres. hortāre verēre sequere partīre
Fut. hortātor verētor sequitor partītor

INFINITIVE

Pres. hortāri verēri sequī partīri
Perf. hortātus esse veritus esse secūtus esse partītus esse
Fut. *hortātūrus esse *veritūrus esse *secūtūrus esse *partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. *hortāns *verēns *sequēns *partiēns
Fut. *hortātūrus *veritūrus *secūtūrus *partītūrus
Perf. hortātus veritus secūtus partitus
Ger. hortandus verendus sequendus partiendus

GERUND

*hortandī, etc. *verendī, etc. *sequendī, etc. *partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

*[hortātum, -tū] *[veritum, -tū] *[secūtum, -tū] *[partītum, -tū]

IRREGULAR VERBS

494.

sum, am, be

Principal Parts sum, esse, fui, futūrus

Pres. Stem es- Perf. Stem fu- Part. Stem fut-

Indicative

Present

Singular

sum, I am
es, thou art
est, he (she, it) is

Plural

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

Imperfect

eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were
IRREGULAR VERBS

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, was
fuísti, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was

fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuérunt, they have been, were
fuère,

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuerás, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been

fueramus, we had been
fuerátis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

PRESENT

SINGULAR       PLURAL
sim             símus
sis             sítis
sit             sint

PERFECT

fuerim          fuerimus
fueris          fueritis
fuerit

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR       PLURAL
esse
essem         essèmus
essēs          essētis
essēt          essent

PLUPERFECT

fuisse
fuisse
fuisse

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR       PLURAL
futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be

IMPERATIVE

2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou
2d Pers. Plur. este, ye

3d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be
3d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be

3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be

PARTICIPLE

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuisse, to have been
Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,
to be about to be
APPENDIX I

495. possum, be able, can

**Principal Parts** possum, posse, potuí, —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

Pres. posse

**Participle**

Pres. potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

496. prōsum, benefit

**Principal Parts** prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus

Pres. Stem prōdes-  Perf. Stem prōfu-  Part. Stem prōfut-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>prōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prōdest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>prōderam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>prōderō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>prōfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>prōfuieram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>prōfuierō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste  Fut. 2d Pers. prōdestō, prōdestōte

**Infinitive**

Pres. prōdesse  Perf. prōfuissē  Fut. prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse

**Future Participle** prōfutūrus, -a, -um
**IRREGULAR VERBS**

497. **Principal Parts**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{volō, velle, volūī, } & \quad \text{be willing, will, wish} \\
\text{nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, } & \quad \text{be unwilling, will not} \\
\text{mālō, mālle, mālūī, } & \quad \text{be more willing, prefer}
\end{align*}
\]

Nōlō and mālō are compounds of volō. Nōlō is for ne (not) + volō, and mālō for mā (from magis, more) + volō. The second person vis is from a different root.

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vīs</td>
<td>nōn vīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam, volēs, etc.</td>
<td>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volūī</td>
<td>nōlūī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velī’mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velī’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>vellem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>nōlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlīte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nōlītō, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX I

INFINITIVE

| Pres.  | velle       | nōlle       | mālle       |
| Perf.  | voluisse    | nōluisse    | māluisse    |

PARTICIPLE

| Pres.  | volēns, -entis | nōlēns, -entis |

498.

ferō, bear, carry, endure

Principal Parts ferō, ferre, tuli, lātūs

Pres. Stem fer-  Perf. Stem tul-  Part. Stem lāt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>Indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>feram, ferās, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. 2d Pers.</td>
<td>fer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. 2d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferēns, -entis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>ferendī</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>ferendum</th>
<th>Supine (Active Voice)</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>[lātum]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>[lātū]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

499. eō, go

Principal Parts: eō, ēre, ēī (īvī), ētum (n. perf. part.)
Pres. Stem ī-  Perf. stem ī- or īv-  Part. Stem ēt-

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>eō</th>
<th>īmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>ibam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ibō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>ēī (īvī)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>ērām (īrām)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>ērō (īrō)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eam</td>
<td></td>
<td>ēte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ēte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ēre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>ēsse (īvasive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ētūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>īēns, gen. euntis (§ 472)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ētūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>eundi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eundō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Supine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eundum</td>
<td>[ētum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>[ētū]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as ītur, ītum est, etc.*

*b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.*

500. fīō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen

Principal Parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>fīō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>fīēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuerem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# APPENDIX I

## Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fierī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>[factum īrī]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>faciendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE MUNIUNTUR**
APPENDIX II

501. RULES OF SYNTAX

Note. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nominaive Case

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? § 36.

Agreement

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. § 28.
3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. § 76.
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. § 81.
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. § 65.
6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. § 215. a.
7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. § 224.

Prepositions

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. § 52.

Genitive Case

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? § 38.
10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive. § 409.
11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive. § 331.
12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. § 443.

261
Dative Case

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. § 45.

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs creō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning. § 154.

15. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. § 426.

16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites. § 143.

17. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which; often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected. § 437.

Accusative Case

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? § 37.

19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. § 214.

20. The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 263, 266.

21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. § 336.

22. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. § 392.

Ablative Case

23. Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? § 102.

24. Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? § 103.

25. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This answers the question With whom? § 104.

26. The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? § 105.

27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference. § 317.
28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. §381.

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. §444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. §445.

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. §398.

31. The *place from which* is expressed by ā or ab, de, dē or ex with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, *domus*, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§264, 266.

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *ablative of separation*. §180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. §181.

34. The comparative degree, if *quam* is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. §309.

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. §275.

36. 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word *domus* express the *place in which* by the locative. §268.

**Gerund and Gerundive**

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. §406.1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. §406.2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or the genitive with *causā*, is used to express purpose. §407.
Moods and Tenses of Verbs

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. § 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause. § 349.

41. A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. § 366.

42. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or ne (that or lest). § 372.

43. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut non, and have the verb in the subjunctive. § 385.

44. Object clauses of result with ut or ut non are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. § 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description. § 390.

46. The conjunction cum means when, since, or although. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. § 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. § 416.

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving. § 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. § 418.

50. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. § 432.
APPENDIX III

REVIEWS

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

502. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS
agricola dea gallina pugna
ancilla domina iniuria sagitta
aqua fabula insula silva
casa fera luna terra
causa filia nauta tuba
cena fortuna pecunia via
corona fuga puella victoria

ADJECTIVES
alta clara magna nova pulchra
bona grata longa parva sola

VERBS
amat est laboret narrat nuntiat portat sunt
dat habitat laudat necat parat pugnat vocat

PREPOSITIONS
a or ab ad cum de
ex in

PRONOUNS
mea tua quia
quis cuius quod

cui quem quid

ADVERBS
cur deinde non

CONJUNCTIONS
et quia

INTERROGATIVE

PARTICLE
-ne quod

1 It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.
2 Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Caesar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.

265
503. Give the Latin of the following words:

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

flight  tells  goddess  what
story  money  wild beast  way
new  calls  praises (verb)  bad
lives (verb)  with  alone  loves
away from your  pleasing  pretty
who  then, in the  prepares  water
why  next place  are  great
forest  daughter  to  is
wreath  to whom  because  announces
deep, high  fortune  arrow  injury, wrong
dinner  famous  cottage  battle (noun)
out from  labors (verb)  gives  small
my  kills  girl  fights (verb)
where  not  good  maid
trumpet  in  carries  down from
lady, mistress  and  chicken  long
whom  sailor  victory  cause
island  farmer  land  whose

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

1 The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.
505. Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Rule for gender
   a. Singular
   b. Plural
3. Case terminations
4. Irregular nouns

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX–XVII

506. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns of the First Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agrī cultūra</th>
<th>cópia</th>
<th>fāma</th>
<th>galea</th>
<th>lacrina</th>
<th>patria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsīntia</td>
<td>diligēntia</td>
<td>fēmina</td>
<td>inopia</td>
<td>lōrica</td>
<td>praeda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nouns of the Second Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ager</th>
<th>cibus</th>
<th>frūmentum</th>
<th>oppidānus</th>
<th>scūtum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amīcus</td>
<td>cōnsilium</td>
<td>gladius</td>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>servus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma (plural)</td>
<td>domicilium</td>
<td>lēgātus</td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>studium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auxilium</td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>līberī</td>
<td>populus</td>
<td>tēlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>equus</td>
<td>magister</td>
<td>praemium</td>
<td>vīcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrus</td>
<td>filius</td>
<td>mūrus</td>
<td>proelium</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrum</td>
<td>fluvius</td>
<td>numerus</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions**

| aeger, aegra, aegrum | neuter, neutra, neutrum |
| alius, alia, aliud | nōster, nostra, nostrum |
| alter, altera, alterum | nūllus, -a, -um |
| armātus, -a, -um | pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum |
| crēber, crēbra, crēbrum | sōlus, -a, -um |
| dūrus, -a, -um | suus, -a, -um |
| finitīmus, -a, -um | tōtus, -a, -um |
| infīrmus, -a, -um | tuus, -a, -um |
| legiōnārius, -a, -um | üllus, -a, -um |
| liber, libera, liberum | ünus, -a, -um |
| mātūrus, -a, -um | uter, utra, utrum |
| meus, -a, -um | validus, -a, -um |
| miser, misera, miserum | vester, vestra, vestrum |
| multus, -a, -um | |
APPENDIX III

Verbs
arat
cūrat
dēsiderat
mātūrat
properat

Demonstrative Pronoun
is, ea, id

Conjunctions
an
-que
sed

Adverbs
iam
quō
saepe

Preposition
apud

507. Give the Latin of the following words:

sword  war  shield (noun)  plan (noun)
corset  number  whole  people
man  my  it  beautiful
your (plural)  free (adj.)  aid (noun)  no (adj.)
hasten  children  legionary  our
but  wall  weak  battle
among  grain  arms  spear
tear (noun)  weapon  master (of school)  food
village  one  friend  steadiness
strong  plow (verb)  neighboring  fatherland
long for  this or that  sick  town
and (enclitic)  already  lieutenant  fort
often  helmet  field  camp
want (noun)  river  report, rumor  neither (of two)
which (of two)  zeal  abode  much
care for  any  boy  agriculture
or (in a question)  he  his own  other
whither  son  alone  the other (of two)
wagon  slave  prize (noun)  hard
townsman  your (singular)  master (owner)  booty
wretched  she  carefulness  frequent
ripe  woman  plenty  armed
horse

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like puer or like ager?
Decline bonus, liber, pulcher. How can we tell whether an adjective in -er is declined like liber or like pulcher? Why must we say nauta bonus and not nauta bona? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use tuus and when vester? Why is suus called a reflexive possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by with? Give an illustration in Latin of the ablative of manner; of the ablative of cause; of the ablative of means; of the ablative of accompaniment. What ablative regularly has cum? What ablative sometimes has cum? What uses of the ablative never have cum? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline alius, nullus. Decline is. What does is mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns
   a. Singular in -us
   b. Plural
   a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us
4. Case terminations of nouns
   a. Singular in -um
   b. Plural
5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er and -ir
6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius and -ium

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

510. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

disciplina  poena  rēgīna  trīstitia
forma      potentia  superbia

Nouns of the Second Declension

rīdus  ērūnāmentum  sacrum  socius  verbum

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

amicus  grātus  interfectus  molestus  septem
antiquus idōneus  irātus  perpetuus  superbus
finitimus inimicus  laetus  proximus
APPENDIX III

Adverbs

hodiē  mox
ibi    nunc
maximē nūper

Conjunctions

etiam
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam

Personal Pronoun

ego

Verbs

CONJ. I
volō, -āre

CONJ. II
dēleō, -ēre
doceō, -ēre
faveō, -ēre
habeō, -ēre
iubeō, -ēre
moneō, -ēre
moveō, -ēre
noceō, -ēre
pāreō, -ēre
persuādeō, -ēre
sedeo, -ēre
studeō, -ēre
videō, -ēre

CONJ. III
agō, -ere
capiō, -ere
crēdō, -ere
dicō, -ere
dūcō, -ere
faciō, -ere
fugiō, -ere
iaciō, -ere
mitto, -ere
rapiō, -ere
regō, -ere
resistō, -ere

CONJ. IV
audīō, -ire
muniō, -ire
reperiō, -ire
veniō, -ire

Irregular verb
sum, esse

511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

ancient  not only . . .
come    but also
resist   seven
see   ally, companion
be     pride
fly    fortify
I      send
proud   sit
word   also
sadness  school
find    hear
rule (verb)  hurl
be eager persuade
for    only
nearest  move
sacred rite  soon
queen  glad
flee  punishment
obey  believe
lately  advise
constant especially,
ornament  most of all
power  angry
make, do  beauty
injure  say
now  command (verb)
annoying  there
lead  slain

512. Review Questions. What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense?
What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect sum in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of pugnō? Inflect arō, sedeō, mittō, faciō, and veniō, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of -iō verbs of the third conjugation are like audiō? what like régō? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of portō, dēleō, agō, faciō, mūniō.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII–XXXVI

513. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns of the First Declension**

ālā  cūra  mora  porta  prōvincia  vita

**Nouns of the Second Declension**

animus  bracchium  locus  nāvigium  perīculum  vinum

aurum  deus  mōnstrum  ōrāculum  ventus

**Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions**

adversus  commōtus  dubius  plēnus
attentus  défessus  maximus  saevus
cārus  dexter  perfidus  sinister

**Adverbs**

anteā  diū  ita  subitō
CELERITER  frūstrā  longē  tamen
dēnique  graviter  semper  tum

**Conjunctions**

autem  sī  ubi
### Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dē</th>
<th>per</th>
<th>pró</th>
<th>sine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adpropinquō</td>
<td>recūsō</td>
<td>superō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgō</td>
<td>reportō</td>
<td>temptō</td>
<td>contineō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>vāstō</td>
<td>egeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postulō</td>
<td>stō</td>
<td>vulnerō</td>
<td>prohibēō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>respondeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discēdō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>teneō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interficiō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRREGULAR VERB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>absum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

- **be away:** before, previously
- **wind:** through
- **through:** wind
- **if:** if
- **savage:** wound (verb)
- **wound (verb):** wound
- **wine:** wine
- **delay:** delay
- **faithless:** faithless
- **right:** right
- **seize:** seize
- **quickly:** quickly
- **before, in:** before, in
- **behalf of:** behalf of
- **battle:** battle
- **down from or concerning:** down from or concerning
- **overcome, conquer:** overcome, conquer
- **boat, ship:** boat, ship
- **without:** without
- **hold:** hold
- **sail (verb):** sail
- **life:** life
- **save:** save
- **full:** full
- **refuse:** refuse
- **heavily:** heavily
- **approach:** approach
- **nevertheless:** nevertheless
- **place:** place
- **be without:** be without
- **lack:** lack
- **moved:** moved
- **gold:** gold
- **restrain, keep from:** restrain, keep from
- **bring back, win:** bring back, win
- **keep from:** keep from

### 515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>moveō</th>
<th>moneō</th>
<th>pāreō</th>
<th>veniō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>iaciō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teneō</td>
<td>rapiō</td>
<td>doceō</td>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>videō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iubeō</td>
<td>reperiō</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>persuādeo</td>
<td>absum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agō</td>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>faveō</td>
<td>sedeō</td>
<td>egeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>resistō</td>
<td>noceō</td>
<td>studeō</td>
<td>gerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müniō</td>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>fugiō</td>
<td>stō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
516. Review Questions. What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb sum in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place from which expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition in mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce yes-and-no questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for yes and no? What are the different meanings and uses of ubi?

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII–XLIV

517. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Declension</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Second Declension</th>
<th>Third Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ripa</td>
<td>barbari</td>
<td>castellum</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calamitās</td>
<td>cliēns</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>fōns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>collis</td>
<td>eques</td>
<td>frāter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>fīnis</td>
<td>homō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civis</td>
<td>dēns</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>hostis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

barbarus  dexter  sinister  summus

Prepositions
in with the abl.
in with the acc.
trāns

Adverbs
cotidiē
numquam

Conjunctions
nec, neque
nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque

Verbs

cessō  oppugnō  accipiō  petō  vincō
confirmō  vetō  incipiō  pōnō  vivō

518. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

forbid
rank, row
brother
force
across
savages
horseman
never
mountain
manliness, courage
leader
put, place
time
savage, barbarous
sister
seek
captive
hindrance, baggage

man-of-war
judge
defeat, disaster
fire
tree
foot soldier
receive
general
highest
fountain
orator
neither . . . nor
and not
left

conquer
consul
mother
retainer
citizen
head
safety
assail,
storm
begin
march
decoration
bridge
bird
cease
man
river
work (noun)
and
ship
bank

reodoubt, fort
sea
tower
drill (verb)
legion
terror
into, to
right (adj.)
in
stone
blood
labor (noun)
king
spur
chief
slaughter
strengthen
foot
enemy
animal
father
519. Review Questions. Give the conjugation of possum. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence The bad boy cannot be happy, what is the case of happy? Give the rule. Decline qui. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline quis. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of lapis from the stem lapid-, miles from mūlis, rēx from rēgis. What nouns have i-stems? What peculiarities of form do i-stems have,—masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have -ī and -ē in the abl. Decline turris. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline miles, lapis, rēx, virtūs, cōnsul, legiō, homō, pater, flūmen, opus, tempus, caput, caedēs, urbs, hostis, mare, animal, vis, iter.

520. Fill out the following scheme:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Gender Endings} & \quad \text{Masculine} \\
& \quad \text{Feminine} \\
& \quad \text{Neuter} \\
\text{The Third Declension} & \quad \text{I. Consonant Stems} \\
& \quad \text{a. Masc. and fem.} \\
& \quad \text{b. Neuters} \\
\text{Case Terminations} & \quad \text{II. A-Stems} \\
& \quad \text{a. Masc. and fem.} \\
& \quad \text{b. Neuters} \\
\text{Irregular Nouns} & \end{align*}
\]

VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV–LII

521. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Declension</th>
<th>Second Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amīcitia</td>
<td>annus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōra</td>
<td>rēgnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>littera</td>
<td>tergum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēgnum vertere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus</td>
<td>signum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntius</td>
<td>supplicium,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>supplicium dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>supplicium sūmere dē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX III

THIRD DECLENSION
aestās  nox
corpus  pars
hiems  pāx
libertās  rūs
lūx,  sōl
prīma lūx  vōx
nōmen  vulnus

FOURTH DECLENSION
adventus  impetus
cornū  lacus
domus  manus
equitātus  metus
exercitus  portus
fluctus

FIFTH DECLENSION
acīēs  rēs,  spēs  nihil
diēs  rēs gestae
fīdēs,  rēs adversae
in fīdem venīre  rēs secundae
rēs pūblīca

INDECLINABLE NOUN

Adjectives

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

dēnsus  prīstinus
invīsus  pūblīcus
mirus  secundus
paucī  tantus
primus  vērus

THIRD DECLENSION

dēcr,  dēcris,  dēcre
brevis,  breve
difficilis,  difficile
facilis,  facile
fortis,  forte

Pronouns

PERSONAL  DEMONSTRATIVE  INTENSIVE  INDEFINITE

ego  hic  ipse  aliquis,  aliqūi
nōs  īdem  quis,  quī
suī  īlle
tū  īste
vōs

Adverbs

nē . . . quīdem  paene  satis  itaque
ōlim  quoque  vērō  nisi

Conjunctions  Prepositions

ANTE  POST  PROPTER

Verbs

CONJ. I  CONJ. II  CONJ. III  CONJ. IV
conlocō  dēbeō  committō,  dēsiliō
convocō  exercēō  committere proelium
cremō  maneō  dēcidō
dēmōnstrō  placeō  ēripiō
mandō  sustineō  sūmō,

sūmēre supplicium dē-  
trādūcō
vertō
522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if not, unless</td>
<td>adversity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on account of</td>
<td>unharmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>commonwealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commonwealth</td>
<td>leap down, dismount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead across</td>
<td>remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call together</td>
<td>friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footprint, trace</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear (noun)</td>
<td>hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>behind, after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so great</td>
<td>equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in truth, indeed</td>
<td>that (yonder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a certain</td>
<td>fall down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owe, ought</td>
<td>measure, mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wave, billow</td>
<td>wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing, matter</td>
<td>own, ought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exploits</td>
<td>republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

523. Review Questions. By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline àcer, omnis, pàr. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth
or u-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline avendentus, lacus, cornū, domus. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the place to which, the place from which, the place in which. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and rūs? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or e-declension? Decline diēs, rēs. When is the long ē shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline tuba, servus, pīlum, ager, puer, mīles, cōnsul, flūmen, caedēs, animal. How is the time when expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline ego, tū, is. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him. Decline īpse. How is īpse used? Decline īdem. Decline hic, iste, īle. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline aliquis, quisquam, quidam, quisque.

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII–LX

524. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST DECLENSION</th>
<th>SECOND DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquila</td>
<td>aedificium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fossa</td>
<td>imperium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>captīvus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>negōtium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concilium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>spatium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vāllum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THIRD DECLENSION

| agmen           | gēns               | mors     | regiō   |
| celeritās       | lātitūdō           | mulier   | rūmor   |
| civitās         | longitūdō          | multitūdō| scelus   |
| clāmōr          | magnitūdō          | mūnitiō  | servitūs|
| cohors          | mēns               | nēmō     | timor   |
| difficūlūs      | mercātor           | obses    | vallēs  |
| explōrātor      | mille              | opīniō   |         |

FOURTH DECLENSION

| aditus          | passus             |         |         |
| commeātus       |                    |         |         |

FIFTH DECLENSION

| rēs frūmentāria|
### Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aequus</th>
<th>maximus</th>
<th>plurimus</th>
<th>singulī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bīnī</td>
<td>medius</td>
<td>posterus</td>
<td>superus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ducentī</td>
<td>minimus</td>
<td>prīmus</td>
<td>tardūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>opportūnus</td>
<td>reliquis</td>
<td>ternī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus</td>
<td>optimus</td>
<td>secundūs</td>
<td>ūnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īnferus</td>
<td>pessimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Third Declension

| alacer, alacris, alacre | humilis, humile | peior, peius |
| audāx, audāx            | ingēns, ingēns  | ——, plūs    |
| celer, celeris, celere  | interior, interius | prior, prius |
| citerior, citerius      | lēnis, lēne     | recēns, recēns |
| difficilis, difficile    | maior, maius     | similis, simile |
| dissimilis, dissimile   | melior, melius   | trēs, tria   |
| facilis, facile         | minor, minus     | ulterior, ulterius |
| gracilis, gracile       | nōbilis, nōbile  |           |

### Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>äcriter</th>
<th>magis</th>
<th>optimē</th>
<th>proximē</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audācter</td>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>parum</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>maximē</td>
<td>paulō</td>
<td>statim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
<td>tam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferē</td>
<td>minimē</td>
<td>prope</td>
<td>undique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>multum</td>
<td>proprius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>atque, ac</th>
<th>quà dē causā</th>
<th>circum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aut</td>
<td>quam ob rem</td>
<td>contrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut ... aut</td>
<td>simul atque or</td>
<td>inter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et ... et</td>
<td>simul ac</td>
<td>ob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nam</td>
<td></td>
<td>trāns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>conj. i</th>
<th>conj. ii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>obtineō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>perterreō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moror</td>
<td>valeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vexō</td>
<td>vereor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>conj. iii</th>
<th>conj. iv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdō</td>
<td>orior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadō</td>
<td>perveniō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōscō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsequor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contendō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēdō</td>
<td>patior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfendō</td>
<td>premō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>êgredeior</td>
<td>proficiscor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incendō</td>
<td>progrēdior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incolō</td>
<td>quaeōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>însequor</td>
<td>recipiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occīdō</td>
<td>relinquō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revertor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statūō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsequor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suscipiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trādō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trahō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
525. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

| on account of | width | fear (verb) | leave |
| nearly | scout | worse | abandon |
| keenly, sharply | cohort | greater, larger | be strong |
| thousand | tribe, nation | two by two | receive, recover |
| two | business | least (adv.) | terrify, frighten |
| opportune | by a little | opinion, expectation | dwell |
| remaining | somewhat | approach, entrance | state, citizenship |
| above (adj.) | crime | trader | valley |
| next | difficult | magnitude, size | slavery |
| grain supply | equal | council, assembly | greatly |
| pace | move forward, | space, room | best of all (adv.) |
| shout (noun) | advance | either . . . or | better (adv.) |
| from all sides | multitude | rise, arise | well (adv.) |
| against | woman | suffer, allow | very much |
| around | desire (verb) | press hard | much |
| three | give over, surrender | fall | unlike |
| further | kill | surrender | like (adj.) |
| line of march | overtake | set fire to | slow |
| rumor | hasten, strive | defend | very greatly, exceedingly |
| region | hide | possess, hold | building |
| fortification | one | delay (verb) | mind (noun) |
| eagle | first | nearest (adv.) | easily |
| almost | second, favorable | nearer (adv.) | easy |
| boldly | two hundred | better (adv.) | recent |
| bravely | former | well known, noble | huge, great |
| across | inner | mild, gentle | bold |
| between, among | middle | swift | immediately |
| hither (adj.) | low | eager | as soon as |
| so | outward | low (adj.) | for |
| less | three by three | slender | than |
| more | provisions | one by one | best (adj.) |
| most | speed | no one | greatest |
| worst | ditch | least (adv.) | follow close |
| difficulty | wherfore or therefore | little (adv.) | encourage |
| hostage | for this reason | learn, know | annoy, ravage |
| death | fear (noun) | drag | hide |
| command, power | return | undertake | follow |
| captive | inquire | run | pursue |
| or | set out | fix, decide | both . . . and |
| and | move out, disembark | | rampart |
526. Review Questions. What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare clārus, brevis, vēlōx, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare brevis by adverbs. Decline the comparative of vēlōx. How are adjectives in -er compared? Compare ācer, pulcher, liber. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in -limus. Translate in two ways Nothing is brighter than the sun. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exēr, īnerus, posterus, superus. Decline plūs. Compare citerior, interior, propior, ulterior. Translate That route to Italy is much shorter. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs cārē, līberē, fortīter, audācter. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from facilis? multus? prīmus? plūrimus? bonus? magnus? parvus? Compare prope, saepe, magnopere. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline ēnus, duo, trēs, mille. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with quīdam and cardinal numbers excepting mille? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate amō, mōneō, regō, capiō, audiō, in the active and passive.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI–LXIX


528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of cūrō, dēleō, vincō, rapiō, mūniō. Inflect the
subjunctive tenses of sum; of possum. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō. Decline regēns. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of vereor. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate volō, nōlō, mālō, fīō.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should quō be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows inbeō? What construction follows verbs of fearing? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Caesar’s “Gallic War.”

LESSON IV, § 39

Nouns
dea, goddess (deity)
Diā’na, Diana
fera, a wild beast (fierce)
Latō’na, Latona
sagit’ta, arrow

Verbs
est, he (she, it) is; sunt, they are
necat, he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill

Conjunction
et, and

Pronouns
quis, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., who? cuius (pronounced cō’ί’yōōs, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., whose?

LESSON V, § 47

Nouns
corō’na, wreath, garland, crown
fā’bula, story (fable)
pecū’nia, money (pecuniary)
pugna, battle (pugnacious)
vincō’ria, victory

Verbs
dat, he (she, it) gives
nārrat, he (she, it) tells (narrate)

Conjunction
quia or quod, because

cui (pronounced cō’ί, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., to whom? for whom?

LESSON VI, § 56

Adjectives
bona, good
grātā, pleasing
magna, large, great
mala, bad, wicked

parva, small, little
pulchra, beautiful, pretty
sōla, alone

1 A conjunction is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

**Nouns**
ancil’la, maid servant
lūlia, Julia

**Adverbs**¹
cūr, why; nōn, not

**Pronouns**
mea, my; tua, thy, your (possessives)
quid, interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., what?

-ne, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as amat, he loves, but amat’ne? does he love? est, he is; estne? is he? Of course -ne is not used when the sentence contains quis, cūr, or some other interrogative word.

**Lesson VII, § 62**

**Nouns**
casa, -ae, f., cottage
cēna, -ae, f., dinner
galli’na, -ae, f., hen, chicken
īn’sula, -ae, f., island (peninsula)

**Adverbs**
de-in’dē, then, in the next place
ubi, where

**Preposition**
ad, to, with acc. to express motion toward

**Verbs**
ha’bitat, he (she, it) lives, is living, does live (inhabit)
laudat, he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise (laud)
parat, he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare
vocat, he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite (vocation)

**Pronoun**
quem, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., whom?

**Lesson VIII, § 69**

**Nouns**
Italia, -ae, f., Italy
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet (tube)
via, -ae, f., way, road, street (viaduct)

**Adjectives**
alta, high, deep (altitude)
clāra, clear, bright; famous
lāta, wide (latitude)
longa, long (longitude)
nova, new (novelty)

¹ An adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings sweetly; she is very talented; she began to sing very early.
LESSON IX, § 77

Nouns
bellum, -ī, n., war (re-bell)
cōnstantia, -ae, f., firmness, constancy, steadiness
dominus, -ī, m., master, lord (dominate)
equus, -ī, m., horse (equine)
frūmentum, -ī, n., grain
lēgātus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambas-
sador (legate)
Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, Mark
mūrus, -ī, m., wall (mural)
oppidānus, -ī, m., townsman
oppidum, -ī, n., town
pīlum, -ī, n., spear (pile driver)
servus, -ī, m., slave, servant
Sextus, -ī, m., Sextus

Verbs
cūrat, he (she, it) cares for, with acc.
propērat, he (she, it) hastens

LESSON X, § 82

Nouns
amīcus, -ī, m., friend (amicable)
Germānia, -ae, f., Germany
patria, -ae, f., fatherland
populus, -ī, m., people
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine
vīcus, -ī, m., village

LESSON XI, § 86

Nouns
arma, armōrum, n., plur., arms, es-
pecially defensive weapons
galea, -ae, f., helmet
fāma, -ae, f., rumor; reputation, fame
praeda, -ae, f., booty, spoils (preda-
tory)
tēlum, -ī, n., weapon of offense, spear

Dejectives
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough; un-
feeling, cruel; severe, toilsome
(durable)
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. As a noun, Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman

LESSON XII, § 90

Nouns
filius, filī, m., son (filial)
fluvius, fluviī, m., river (fluent)
gladius, glādī, m., sword (gladiator)
praesidium, praesīdī, n., garrison, guard, protection
proelium, proeliī, n., battle
finitimīmus, -a, -um, bordering upon, neighboring, near to. As a noun, finitimi, -ōrum, m., plur., neighbors
Gemānus, -a, -um, German. As a noun, Gemānus, -ī, m., a German
multus, -a, -um, much; plur., many

Adverb
saepe, often
LESSON XIII, § 95

Nouns
ager, agrĩ, m., field (acre)
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance (copious); plur., troops, forces
Cornēlius, Cornělī, m., Cornelius
lōrǐca, -ae, f., coat of mail, corselet
praemium, praemī, n., reward, prize
(premium)
puer, puerī, m., boy (puerile)
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome
scūtum, -ī, n., shield (escutcheon)
vir, virī, m., man, hero (virile)

Adjectives
legiōnārius, -a, -um,1 legionary, belonging to the legion. As a noun, legiōnāriī, -ōrum, m., plur., legionary soldiers
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, prettī, beautiful

Preposition
apud, among, with acc.

Conjunction
sed, but

LESSON XIV, § 99

Nouns
auxilium, auxi̇lī, n., help, aid (auxiliary)
cōnsilium, cōn̄sili̇, n., plan (counsel)
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, industry
castrum, -ī, n., fort (castle); plur., camp (lit. forts)
castrum, -ī, n., fort (castle); plur., camp (lit. forts)
cibus, -ī, m., food
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, industry
magister, magistrī, m., master, teacher2

Adjectives
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick
miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unfortunate (miser)
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent

LESSON XV, § 107

Nouns
armātus, -a, -um, armed

Adjectives
inopiam, -ae, f., want, lack; the opposite of cōpia
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy
infirmus, -a, -um, weak, feeble (infirm)
 validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy

(1) The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -ī and the vocative in -iē; not in -ī, as in nouns. 2 Observe that dominus, as distinguished from magister, means master in the sense of owner.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

Verb
mātūrat, he (she, it) hastens. Cf. iam, already, now
properat
-que, conjunction, and; an enclitic (cf. § 16) and always added to the
second of two words to be connected, as arma tēla’que, arms and weapons.

LESSON XVII, § 117

Nouns
agri cultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
domicilium, domici’li, n., abode,
dwelling place (domicile)
fēmina, -ae, f., woman (female)

Adjective
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature

Verbs
arat, he (she, it) plows (arable)
dēsiderat, he (she, it) misses, longs
for (desire), with acc.

Adverb
quō, whither

Conjunction
an, or, introducing the second half of a double question, as Is he a
Roman or a Gaul, Estne Rōmānus
an Gallus?

LESSON XVIII, § 124

Nouns
lūdus, -ī, m., school
socius, soci, m., companion, ally
(social)
hodiē, to-day
ibi, there, in that place
mox, presently, soon, of the immediate future

Adjectives
īrātus, -a, -um, angry, furious (irate)
laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad

Adverbs
nunc, now, the present moment
nūper, lately, recently, of the immediate past

LESSON XX, § 136

Nouns
fōrma, -ae, f., form, beauty
poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty
potentia, -ae, f., power (potent)

Adjectives
septem, indeclinable, seven
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty
(superb)

Adjectives
rēgīna, -ae, f., queen (regal)
superbia, -ae, f., pride, haughtiness
trīstitia, -ae, f., sadness, sorrow

Conjunctions
nōn sōlum... sed etiam, not only
... but also
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON XXI, § 140

**Nouns**
sacrum, -ī, n., sacrifice, offering, rite
verbum, -ī, n., word (verb)

**Verbs**
sedeō, -ère, sit (sediment)
vōlō, -āre, fly (volatile)

ego, personal pronoun, I (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

**Adjectives**
interfectus, -a, -um, slain
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying (molest)
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, continuous

LESSON XXII, § 146

**Nouns**
disciplina, -ae, f., training, culture, discipline
örnamentum, -ī, n., ornament, jewel

**Verb**
doceō, -ère, teach (doctrine)

**Adverb**
maximē, most of all, especially

**Adjective**
antiquus, -qua, -quum, old, ancient (antique)

LESSON XXVII, § 168

**Nouns**
āla, - ae, f., wing
deus, -ī, m., god (deity)
mōnstrum, -ī, n., omen, prodigy, monster
örāculum, -ī, n., oracle

**Verb**
vāstō, -āre, lay waste, devastate

**Adjectives**
commōtus, -a, -um, moved, excited
maximus, -a, -um, greatest (maximum)
saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

**Adverbs**
ita, thus, in this way, as follows
tum, then, at that time

LESSON XXVIII, § 171

**Verbs**
respondeō, -ère, respond, reply
servō, -āre, save, preserve

**Adjective**
cārus, -a, -um, dear (cherish)

**Conjunction**
autem, but, moreover, now. Usually stands second, never first

**Noun**
vīta, -ae, f., life (vital)

For the declension of deus, see § 468
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON XXIX, § 176

Verb
superō, -āre, conquer, overcome (in-superable)

Adverbs
semper, always
tamen, yet, nevertheless

Nouns
cūra, -ae, f., care, trouble
locus, -ī, m., place, spot (location).
  Locus is neuter in the plural and
  is declined loca, -ōrum, etc.
perīculum, -ī, n., danger, peril

Prepositions
dē, with abl., down from; concerning
per, with acc., through

Conjunction
si, if

LESSON XXX, § 182

Verbs
absūm, abesse, irreg., be away, be
  absent, be distant, with separative abl.

discēō, -ere, depart, go away, leave,
  with separative abl.
dēgō, -ere, lack, need, be without,
  with separative abl.
interficīō, -ere, kill
prohibēō, ēre, restrain, keep from
  (prohibit)
vulnerō, -āre, wound (vulnerable)

Adjectives
défessus, -a, -um, weary, worn out

Adverb
longē, far, by far, far away

Nouns
prōvincia, -ae, f., province
vīnum, -ī, n., wine

LESSON XXXI, § 188

Nouns
aurum, -ī, n., gold (oriole)
mora, -ae, f., delay
nāvīgium, nāvī’gī, n., boat, ship
ventus, -ī, m., wind (ventilate)

Adjectives
attentus, -a, -um, attentive, careful
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful (dubious)
perfidus, -a, -um, faithless, treacher-
  ous (perfidy)

Adverb
anteā, before, previously

Verb
navigō, -āre, sail (navigate)

Preposition
sine, with abl., without

1 This verb governs the dative because the idea of nearness to is stronger than that of motion to. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with ad and the accusative.
LESSON XXXII, § 193

Nouns
animus, -i, m., mind, heart; spirit,
feeling (animate)
bracchium, bracchi, n., forearm, arm
porta, -ae, f., gate (portal)

Adjectives
adversus, -a, -um, opposite; adverse,
contrary
plenus, -a, -um, full (plenty)

Preposition
prō, with abl., before; in behalf of;
instead of

diu, for a long time, long

LESSON XXXIV, § 200

Adverbs
celeriter, quickly (celerity)
dēnique, finally

Verb
reportō, -āre, -āvī, bring back, restore; win, gain (report)

LESSON XXXVI, § 211

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (dextrous)

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left
frustrā, adv., in vain (frustrate)

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on; wear; bellum gerere, to wage war
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus, seize, take possession of (occupy)
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus, demand (ex-postulate)
recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus, refuse
stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand

temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus, try, tempt, test; attempt
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, ——, keep, hold (tenacious)

The word ubi, which we have used so much in the sense of where in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. ubi = when, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,
   Ubi mōnstrum audīvērunt, fāgērunt, when they heard
   the monster, they fled

2. ubi = where, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,
   Videō oppidum ubi Galba habitat, I see the town where
   Galba lives

Ubi is called a relative conjunction because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. When in the first sentence is equivalent to at the time at which;
and in the second, where is equivalent to the place in which.
neque or nec, conj., neither, nor; castellum, -i, n., redoubt, fort (castle) and... not; neque... neque, cotidiē, adv., daily
neither... nor

cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus, cease, with the infin.
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, begin (incipient), with the infin.
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus, storm, assail
petō, petere, petīvi or petīi, petitus, aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek,
ask (petition)
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, place, put (position); castra pōnere, to pitch camp
possum, posse, potui, ——, be able, can (potent), with the infin.
vētō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid (veto), with the infin. ; opposite of iubeō, command
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer (in-incible)
vivō, vivere, vivī, ——, live, be alive (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, § 234

barbarus, -a, -um, strange, foreign, barbarous. As a noun, barbarei,
-ārum, m., plur., savages, barbarians
dux, ducis, m., leader (duke). Cf.
the verb dūcō
eques, equitās, m., horseman, cav-
alityman (equestrian)
iūdex, iūdicis, m., judge
lapis, lapidis, m., stone (lapidary)
miles, militis, m., soldier (militia)

pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier (ped-
destrian)
pēs, pedis,¹ m., foot (pedal)
princeps, principis, m., chief (prin-
cipal)
rex, régis, m., king (regal)
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest
(summit)
virtūs, virtūtis, f., manliness, cour-
age (virtue)

LESSON XL, § 237

Caesar, -aris, m., Cæsar
capitūs, -ī, m., captive, prisoner
cōnsul, -is, m., consul
frāter, frātris, m., brother (frater-
nity)
homō, hominis, m., man, human
being

imperātor, imperātōris, m., com-
mander in chief, general (em-
peror)

¹ Observe that e is long in the nom. sing. and short in the other cases.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*
matēr, mātris, f., *mother (maternal)*
ordō, ordinis, m., *row, rank (order)*
pater, patris, m., *father (paternal)*
salūs, salūtis, f., *safety (salutary)*
soror, sorōris, f., *sister (sorority)*

LESSON XLI, § 239

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *loss, disaster, defeat (calamity)*
caput, capitis, n., *head (capital)*
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river (flume)*
labor, labōris, m., *labor, toil*
opus, operis, n., *work, task*
örātor, orātōris, m., *orator*
ripa, -ae, f., *bank (of a stream)*
tempus, temporis, n., *time (temporal)*
terror, terrōris, m., *terror, fear*
victor, victōris, m., *victor*
'accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus, receive, accept*
cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre, cōnfirmāvi, cōnfirmātus, *strengthen, establish, encourage (confirm)*

LESSON XLIII, § 245

animal, animālis (-ium1), n., *animal*
avis, avis (-ium), f., *bird (aviation)*
caedēs, caedis (-ium), f., *slaughter*
calcar, calcāris (-ium), n., *spur*
civis, civis (-ium), m. and f., *citizen (civic)*
cliēns, clientis (-ium), m., *retainer, dependent (client)*
finis, finis (-ium), m., *end, limit (final); plur., country, territory*
hostis, hostis (-ium), m. and f., *enemy in war (hostile). Distinguish from*
inimicus, which means a *personal enemy*
ignis, ignis (-ium), m., *fire (ignite)*
insigne, insignis (-ium), n., *decoration, badge (ensign)*
mare, maris (-ium2), n., *sea (marine)*
nāvis, nāvis (-ium), f., *ship (naval); nāvis longa, man-of-war*
turris, turris (-ium), f., *tower (turret)*
urbis, urbis (-ium), f., *city (suburb). An urb is larger than an oppidum*

LESSON XLIV, § 249

arbor, arboris, f., *tree (arbor)*
collis, collis (-ium), m., *hill*
dēns, dentis (-ium), m., *tooth (dentist)*
fōns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source*
iter, itineris, n., *march, journey, route (itinerary)*
mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium), m., *month*
moenia, -ium, n., plur., *walls, fortifications. Cf. mūrus*
mōns, montis (-ium), m., *mountain; summus mōns, top of the mountain*
numquam, adv., *never*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge (pontoon)*

1 The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems. 2 The genitive plural of mare is not in use.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood (sanguinary)
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest (summit)
	rans, prep. with acc., across (transatlantic)
vīs(vīs), gen. plur. vīrium, f., strength, force, violence (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258

ācer, ā cris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager (acid)
brēvis, breve, short, brief
difficultis, difficile, difficult
facilis, facile, facile, easy
fortis, forte, brave (fortitude)
gravis, grave, heavy, severe, serious (grave)

omnis, omne, every, all (omnibus)
pār, gen. paris, equal (par)
paučī, -ae, -a, few, only a few (paucity)
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable, opposite of adversus
signum, -ī, n., signal, sign, standard
velox, gen. velocis, swift (velocity)

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, arrange, station, place (collocation)
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, point out, explain (demonstrate)
mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus, commit, intrust (mandate)

LESSON XLVI, § 261

adventus, -ūs, m., approach, arrival (advent)
ante, prep. with acc., before (ante-date)
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army (cornucopia); ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing; ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing
equītātus, -ūs, m., cavalry
exercitus, -ūs, m., army

impetus, -ūs, m., attack (impetus);
impetum facere in, with acc., to make an attack on
lacus, -ūs, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus, m., lake
manus, -ūs, f., hand; band, force (manual)
portus, -ūs, m., harbor (port)
post, prep. with acc., behind, after (post-mortem)

cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus, burn (cremate)
exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, practice, drill, train (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, § 270

Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., Athens
Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth

domus, -ūs, locative domī, f., house, home (dome). Cf. domicilium

Genāva, -ae, f., Geneva
Pompēii, -ōrum, m., plur., Pompeii, a city in Campania. See map
propter, prep. with acc., on account of; because of tergum, tergī, n., back; a tergo, behind, in the rear vulnus, vulneris, n., wound (vulnerable)

rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. rūra, n., country (rustic)

committō, committere, commissī, commissussus, intrust, commit; proelium committere, join battle

convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon (convoke)
timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, fear; be afraid (timid)

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change (convert); terga vertere, to turn the backs, hence to retreat

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle lūx, lūcis, f., light (lucid); prīma lūx, daybreak

aestās, aestātis, f., summer mercīdēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, no plur., m., midday (meridian)

annus, -ī, m., year (annual)

diēs, diēi, m., day (diary)

nox, noctis (-ium), f., night (nocturnal)

prīmus, -a, -um, first (prime)

fīdēs, fīdeī, no plur., f., faith, trust; promise, word; protection; in fidem venire, to come under the protection

rēs, rei, f., thing, matter (real); rēs gestae, deeds, exploits (lit. things performed); rēs adversae, adversity; rēs secundae, prosperity

spēs, speī, f., hope

fluctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow (fluctuate)

LESLSSON XLIX, § 283

hiemis, f., winter

hōra, -ae, f., hour

amīcitia, -ae, f., friendship (amicable)
nūntius, nūntī, m., messenger. Cf. nūntiō

itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly

pāx, pācis, f., peace (pacify)

littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; plur., a letter, an epistle

rēgnum, -ī, n., reign, sovereignty, kingdom

metus, metūs, m., fear

supplicium, suppli'cī, n., punishment; supplicium sūmere dē, with abl., inflict punishment on; supplicium dare, suffer punishment. Cf. poena

nihil, indeclinable, n., nothing (nihilist)

poolē, placēre, placui, placitus, be pleasing to, please, with dative. Cf. § 154 sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, sustain
LESSON L, § 288

corpus, corporis, n., body (corporal)
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense
īdem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative pronoun, the same (identity)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, self; even, very
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous (miracle)

ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon a time
pars, partis (-ium), f., part, region, direction
quoque, adv., also. Stands after the word which it emphasizes
sōl, sōlis, m., sun (solar)
vērus, -a, -um, true, real (verity)

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus, owe, ought (debt)
ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus, snatch from

LESSON LI, § 294

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pronoun, this (of mine); he, she, it
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pronoun, that (yonder); he, she, it
invisus, -a, -um, hateful, detested, with dative. Cf. § 143
iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pronoun, that (of yours); he, she, it
libertās, -ātis, f., liberty
modus, -ī, m., measure; manner, way, mode

nōmen, nōminis, n., name (nominate)
oculus, -ī, m., eye (oculist)
prīstinus, -a, -um, former, old-time (pristine)
pūbicus, -a, -um, public, belonging to the state; reā pūblica, rei pūblica, f., the commonwealth, the state, the republic
vestīgium, vestīgī, n., footprint, track; trace, vestige
vōx, vōcis, f., voice

LESSON LII, § 298

incolumis, -e, unharmed
nē ... quidem, adv., not even. The emphatic word stands between nē and quidem
nisi, conj., unless, if ... not
paene, adv., almost (peninsula)

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently (satisfaction)
tantus, -a, -um, so great
vērō, adv., truly, indeed, in fact.
As a conj. but, however, usually stands second, never first.

dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidi, ——, fall down (deciduous)
dēsiliō, dēsiliere, dēsilui, dēsultus, leap down, dismount
maneō, maneere, mānei, mānsūrus, remain
trādūco, trādūcere, trādūxi, trāductus, lead across
LESSON LIII, § 306

aquila, -ae, f., eagle (aquiline)
audax, gen. audácis, adj., bold, audacious
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick (cerenity). Cf. vélōx
explorātor, -ōris, m., scout, spy (explorer)
ingēns, gen. ingentis, adj., huge, vast
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle part of (medium)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, ask, inquire, seek (question). Cf. petō
mēns, mentis (-ium), f., mind (mental). Cf. animus
opportūnum, -a, -um, opportune quam, adv., than. With the superlative quam gives the force of as possible, as quam audācissimī virī, men as bold as possible
recēns, gen. recentis, adj., recent tam, adv., so. Always with an adjective or adverb, while ita is generally used with a verb

LESSON LIV, § 310

alacer, alacris, alacre, eager, spirited, excited (alacrity)
CELERITĀS, -ātis, f., speed (cerenity)
clāmor, clāmōris, m., shout, clamor lenis, lēne, mild, gentle (lenient)
mulier, multī'ēris, f., woman
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., multitude
nēmō, dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem
cupiō, cupere, cupīvi, cupītus, desire, wish (cupidity)
(gen. nūllius, abl. nūllo, from nūlus), no plur., m. and f., no one
nōbilis, nōbile, well known, noble
noctū, adv. (an old abl.), by night (nocturnal)
statim, adv., immediately, at once
subitō, adv., suddenly
tardūs, -a, -um, slow (tardy)

LESSON LV, § 314

aedificium, aedifi'cī, n., building, dwelling (edifice)
imperium, imper'ī, n., command, chief power; empire
mors, mortis (-ium), f., death (mortal)
abdō, abdere, abīdī, abītus, hide contendō, contendere, contendi, contentus, strain, struggle; hasten (contend)
occidō, occidere, occīdī, occissus, cut down, kill. Cf. necō, interficiō
perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritus, terrify, frighten recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus, receive, recover; sē recipere, betake one's self, withdraw; retreat
trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditus, give over, surrender; deliver (traitor)
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.
As a noun, m. and n. plur., the rest (relic)
scelus, sceleris, n., crime
servitūs, -ūtis, f., slavery (servitude)
vallēs, vallis (-ium), f., valley
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON LV, § 318

aditus, -ūs, m., approach, access; entrance
civitās, civitātis, f., citizenship; body of citizens, state (city)
inter, prep. with acc., between; among (interstate commerce)

nam, conj., for
obses, obsidis, m. and f., hostage
paulo, adv. (abl. n. of paulus), by a little, somewhat

incolō, incolere, incolui, ——, transitive, inhabit; intransitive, dwell. Cf. habitō, vivō
relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus, leave, abandon (relinquish)
statuō, statuere, statui, statūtus, fix; decide (statute), usually with infin.

LESSON LVII, § 326

aequus, -a, -um, even, level; equal
cohors, cohortis (-ium), f., cohort, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
currō, currere, currīrī, cursus, run (course)
difficultās, -ātis, f., difficulty
fossa, -ae, f., ditch (fosse)
gēns, gentis (-ium), f., race, tribe, nation (Gentile)
negōtium, negōtī, n., business, affair, matter (negotiate)
regiō, -ōnis, f., region, district
rūmor, rūmōris, m., rumor, report. Cf. fāma
simul atque, conj., as soon as

suscipio, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus, undertake
trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, drag, draw (ex-tract)
valeō, valere, valui, valērūs, be strong; plūriārum valērē, to be most powerful, have great influence (value). Cf. validus

LESSON LVIII, § 332

commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions
lātitūdō, -inis, f., width (latitude)
longitūdō, -inis, f., length (longitude)
magnitūdō, -inis, f., size, magnitude
mercātor, mercātōris, m., trader, merchant
mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., fortification (munition)
magnitudō, -inis, f., size, magnitude
spatium, spatī, n., room, space, distance; time
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvi, cognitus, learn; in the perfect tenses, know (re-cognize)
cōgō, cōgerē, coēgi, coāctus, collect; compel (cogent)
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, defend
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, set fire to, burn (incendiary). Cf. cremō
obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, possess, occupy, hold (obtain)
perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus, come through, arrive

LESSON LIX, § 337

agmen, agminus, n., line of march, column; primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear
atque, ac, conj., and; atque is used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only. Cf. et and -que
concilium, concīliī, n., council, assembly

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe
passus, passūs, m., a pace, five Roman feet; mille passuum, a thousand (of) paces, a Roman mile
quā dē causā, for this reason, for what reason
vāllum, -ī, n., earthworks, rampart

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall (decadence)
dēdō, dēdere, dēdī, dēditus, surrender, give up; with a reflexive pronoun, surrender one's self, submit, with the dative of the indirect object
premō, premere, pressī, pressus, press hard, harass
vexō, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus, annoy, ravage (vex)

LESSON LX, § 341

aut, conj., or; aut ... aut, either ... or
causa, abl. of causa, for the sake of, because of. Always stands after the gen. which modifies it
ferē, adv., nearly, almost

opiniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, supposition, expectation
rēs frumentāria, reī frumentāriae, f. (lit. the grain affair), grain supply
timor, -ōris, m., fear. Cf. timeō
undique, adv., from all sides

cōnōr, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, attempt, try
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, move out, disembark; prōgredior, move forward, advance (egress, progress)
morō, morāri, morātus sum, delay
orōr, orīrī, ortus sum, arise, spring; begin; be born (from) (origin)
proficiscor, proficisci, prefectus sum, set out
revertor, revertī, reversus sum, return (revert). The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., revertī
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow (sequence). Note the following compounds of sequor and the force of the different prefixes: cōnsequor (follow with), overtake; însequor (follow against), pursue; subsequor (follow under), follow close after
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

A
ā or ab, prep. with abl. from, by, off.
Translated on in ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing; ā fronte, on the front or in front; ā dextrā, on the right; ā latere, on the side; etc.
ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hide, conceal
ab-ducō, -ere, -ductus, lead off, lead away
abs-cidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ab(s), off, + caedō, cut], cut off
ab-sum, -esse, āfūi, āfutūrus, be away, be absent, be distant, be off; with ā or ab and abl., § 501. 32
ac, conj., see atque
ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ad, to, + capiō, take], receive, accept
ācer, ācris, acēre, adj. sharp; figuratively, keen, active, eager (§ 471)
acerbus, -a, -um, adj. bitter, sour
aciēs, -ēi, f. [ācer, sharp], edge; line of battle
ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], compared
ācrīus, ācerrimē, sharply, fiercely
ad, prep. with acc. to, towards, near.
With the gerund or gerundive, to, for
ad-aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make equal, make level with
ad-ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead to; move, induce
ad-eō, -ère, -ēi, -ētus, go to, approach, draw near; visit, with acc. (§ 413)
ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tuli, ad-lātus, bring, convey; report, announce; render, give (§ 426)
ad-ficō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to, + faciō, do], affect, visit
adflictātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of adfictō, shatter], shattered
ad-flēgō, -ere, -flēxi, -flēctus, dash upon, strike upon; harass, distress
ad-hibeō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtus [ad, to, + habēō, hold], apply, employ, use
ad-hūc, adv. hitherto, as yet, thus far
aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, approach], approach, access; entrance. Cf. adventus
ad-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bind to, fasten
ad-loquor, -loqui, -locātus, dep. verb [ad, to, + loquor, speak], speak to, address, with acc.
ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, manage, direct
admirātiō, -onis, f. [admirō, wonder at], admiration, astonishment
ad-moveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus, move to; apply, employ
ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, come near, approach, with dat.
ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be present; assist; with dat., § 426
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of adulēscō, grow], a youth, young man, young person
adventus, -ās, m. [ad, to, + venīō, come], approach, arrival (§466)
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of adventō, turn to], turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse. rēs adversae, adversity
aedificium, aedificī, n. [aedificō, build], building, edifice
aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aēdēs, house, + faciō, make], build
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. sick, feeble
eaquālis, -ē, adj. equal, like. As a noun, aquālis, -is, m. or f. one of the same age
aequus, -a, -um, adj. even, level; equal
Aesōpus, -ī, m. Aēsop, a writer of fables
aestās, -ātis, f. summer. initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
aetās, -ātis, f. age
Aethiopia, -ae, f. Ethiopia, a country in Africa
Āfrica, -ae, f. Africa
Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj. of Africa. A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa
ager, agrī, m. field, farm, land (§462.c)
aggrī, -eris, m. mound
agmen, -inis, n. [agō, drive], an army on the march, column. prīmum agmen, the van
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, lead; do, perform. vitam agere, pass life
agricola, -ae, m. [agō, field, + colō, cultivate], farmer
agri cultura, -ae, f. agriculture
āla, -ae, f. wing
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. active, eager.
Cf. ācer
alacrītās, -ātis, f. [alacer, active], eagerness, alacrity
ancilla
alacriter, adv. [alacer, active], comp
alacrius, alacerrimē, actively, eagerly
albus, -a, -um, adj., white
alcēs, -is, f. elk
Alcmēna, -ae, f. Alcmē'na, the mother of Hercules
aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quōd), indef. pron. some one, some (§487)
alius, -a, -ud (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. another, other. alius ... alius ... Alia ... Alia, some ... others (§110)
Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. the Alps
alter, -era, -erum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. the one, the other (of two). alter ... alter, the one ... the other (§110)
altītūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high], height
altus, -a, -um, adj. high, tall, deep
Amāzonēs, -um, f. plur. Amazons, a fabled tribe of warlike women
ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo), both
amicē, adv. [amicus, friendly], superl.
amicissimē, in a friendly manner
amicō, -īre, ——, -īctus [amī-, about, + iacīō, throw], throw around, wrap about, clothe
amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship
amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly. As a noun, amīcus, -ī, m. friend
ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send away; lose
amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love, like, be fond of (§488)
amphitheātrum, -ī, n. amphitheater
amplius, -a, -um, adj. large, ample; honorable, noble
an, conj. or; introducing the second part of a double question
ancilla, -ae, f. maidservant
ancora

ancora, -ae, f. anchor
Andromeda, -ae, f. Androm’deda, daughter of Cepheus and wife of Perseus

angulus, -i, m. angle, corner
anim-advertō, -ere, -ti, -sus [animus, mind, + advertō, turn to], turn the mind to, notice
animal,-ālis, n. [anima, breath], animal
§ 465. b)
animōsus, -a, -um, adj. spirited
animus, -i, m. [anima, breath], mind, heart; spirit, courage, feeling; in this sense often plural
annus, -i, m. year
ante, prep. with acc. before
anteā, adv. [ante], before, formerly
antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, ancient, old
aper, apri, m. wild boar
Apollo, -inis, m. Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, brother of Diana
ap-pāreō, -ère, -uī, — [ad + pāreō, appear], appear
ap-pellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call by name, name. Cf. nōminō, vocō
Appius, -a, -um, adj. Appian
ap-plicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, apply, direct, turn
apud, prep. with acc. among; at, at the house of
aqua, -ae, f. water
aquila, -ae, f. eagle
āra, -ae, f. altar
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose § 420 c. Cf. existimō, putō
arbor, -onis, f. tree § 247. 1. a)
Arcadia, -ae, f. Arcadia, a district in southern Greece
ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, be on fire, blaze, burn

aurātus

arduus, -a, -um, adj. steep
Aricia, -ae, f. Aricia, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome
ariēs, -etis, m. battering-ram (p. 221)
arma, -ūrum, n. plur. arms, weapons. Cf. tēlum
armātus, -a, -um, adj. [armō, arm], armed, equipped
arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, plow, till
ars, artis, f. art, skill
articulus, -i, m. joint
ascribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [ad, in addition, + scribō, write], enroll, enlist
Āsia, -ae, f. Asia, i.e. Asia Minor
at, conj. but. Cf. autem, sed
Athēnai, -ārum, f. plur. Athens
Atlās, -antis, m. Atlas, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky
at-que, ac, conj. and, and also, and what is more. atque may be used before either vowels or consonants, ac before consonants only
attentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of attendō, direct (the mind) toward], attentive, intent on, careful
at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. thunderstruck, astounded
audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, audacity
audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], compared audācius, audācissēmē, boldly
audāx, -ācis, adj. bold, daring
aufdeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
audīō, -ēre, āvi or -ī, -ātus, hear, listen to §§ 420. d, 491
Augēas, -ae, m. Augē’as, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned
aura, -ae, f. air, breeze
aurātus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], adorned with gold
aureus
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold],
golden
aurum, -i, n. gold
aut, conj. or. aut... aut, either... or
autem, conj., usually second, never
first, in the clause, but, moreover,
however, now. Cf. at, sed
auxilium, auxili, n. help, aid, assist-
ance; plur. auxiliaries
ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn away, turn
aside
avis, -is, f. bird (§ 243. 1)

B
ballista, -ae, f. ballista, an engine for
hurling missiles (p. 220)
balteus, -i, m. belt, sword belt
barbarus, -i, m. barbarian, savage
bellum, -i, n. war. bellum inferre, with
dat. make war upon
bene, adv. [for bonē, from bonus], com-
pared melius, optimē, well
benignē, adv. [benignus, kind], com-
pared benignius, benignissimē, kindly
benignus, -a, -um, adj. good-natured,
kind, often used with dat.
bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj.
two each, two at a time (§ 334)
bis, adv. twice
bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared melior,
optimus, good, kind (§ 469. a)
bōs, bovis (gen. plur. boum or bovum,
dat. and abl. plur. bōbus or būbus),
m. and f. ox, cow
braccium, bracci, n. arm
brevis, -e, adj. short
Brundisium, -i, n. Brundisium, a sea-
port in southern Italy. See map
bulla, -ae, f. bulla, a locket made of
small concave plates of gold fast-
tened by a spring (p. 212)
casa
casa
C
C. abbreviation for Gāius, Eng. Caius
cadō, -ere, ceˈcīdī, cāsūrus, fall
caedēs, -is, f. [caedō, cut], (a cutting
down), slaughter, carnage (§ 465. a)
caelum, -i, n. sky, heavens
Caesar, -aris, m. Cæsar, the famous
general, statesman, and writer
calamitās, -ātis, f. loss, calamity, defeat,
disaster
calcar, -āris, n. spur (§ 465. b)
Campānia, -ae, f. Campania, a dis-
trict of central Italy. See map
Campānus, -a, -um, adj. of Campania
campus, -i, m. plain, field, esp. the
Campus Martius, along the Tiber
just outside the walls of Rome
canis, -is, m. and f. dog
canō, -ere, ceˈcīnī, ——, sing
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [canō, sing],
sing
Capēnus, -a, -um, adj. of Capena, esp.
the Porta Capēna, the gate at Rome
leading to the Appian Way
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize,
capture (§ 492)
Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj. belonging
to the Capitol, Capitoline
Capitōlium, Capitōˈli, n. [caput,
head], the Capitol, the hill at Rome
on which stood the temple of
Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel
capsa, -ae, f. box for books
captīvus, -i, m. [capiō, take], captive
Capua, -ae, f. Capua, a large city of
Campania. See map
caput, -itis, n. head (§ 464. 2. b)
carcer, -eris, m. prison, jail
carrus, -i, m. cart, wagon
cārus, -a, -um, adj. dear, precious
casa, -ae, f. hut, cottage
castellum

castellum, -ī, n. [dim. of castrum, fort], redbull, fort
castrum, -ī, n. fort. Usually in the plural, castra, -ōrum, a military camp. castra pōnere, to pitch camp
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall'], chance; misfortune, loss
catatulta, -ae, f. catapulta, an engine for hurling stones
catēna, -ae, f. chain
caulōna, -ae, f. inn
causa, -ae, f. cause, reason. quā dē causā, for this reason
cēdō, -ere, cessō, cessārūs, give way, retire
celer, -eris, -ere, adj. swift, fleet
celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, speed
celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], compared celerius, celerimē, swiftly
cēna, -ae, f. dinner
centum, indecl. numeral adj. hundred
centūriō, -onis, m. centurion, captain
Cēpheus (dissyl.), -ēi (acc. Cēpha), m. Cēpheus, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda
Cerberus, -ī, m. Cerberus, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades
certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, struggle], struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv. [certus, sure], compared certius, certissimē, surely, certainly
certus, -ā, -um, adj. fixed, certain, sure. aliquem certōrem facere (to make some one more certain), to inform some one
cervus, -ī, m. stag, deer
cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, delay, cease
cibāria, -ōrum, n. plur. food, provisions
cibus, -ī, m. food, victuals
collum
cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur. the Cimbri
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. Cimbrian
cinctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of cingō, surround], girl, surrounded
cingō, -ere, cīnīxī, cinctus, gird, surround
circiter, adv. about
circum, prep. with acc. around
circum-stō, -ere, -ēi, -ētus, go around
circum-stētī, -ere, circum-stētī, ---, stand around, surround
circum-veniō, -ere, -vēnī, -ventus (come around), surround
citerior, -ius, adj. in comp., superl.
citimīus, hither, nearer ($§ 475$
civēlis, -e, adj. [civēs], civil
civēs, -is, m. and f. citizen ($§ 243. 1$
civītās, -ātis, f. [civēs, citizen], (body of citizens), state; citizenship
cīmar, -oris, m. shout, cry
clarus, -a, -um, adj. clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining
classis, -is, f. fleet
claudō, -ere, -ēi, -ēs, shut, close
clavus, -ī, m. stripe
cliēns, -entis, m. dependent, retainer, client ($§ 465. a$
Cocles, -itis, m. (blind in one eye), Cocles, the surname of Horatius
cogōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitus, learn, know, understand. Cf. scīō ($§ 420. b$
cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactus [co(m)-, together, + agō, drive], (drive together), collect, compel, drive
cohors, cohortis, f. cohort, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
collis, -is, m. hill. in summō colle, on top of the hill ($§ 247. 2. a$
collum, -ī, n. neck
colō, -ere, colūi, cultus, cultivate, till; 
honor, worship; devote one’s self to 
columna, -ae, f. column, pillar 
com-, (col-, con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, 
together, with, or intensifying the 
meaning of the root word 
coma, -ae, f. hair ’
comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-, together, 
+ eō, go], companion, comrade 
comitātus, -ūs, m. [comitor, accompany], escort, company 
comitor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb 
[comes, companion], accompany 
com-meātus, -ūs, m. supplies 
com-minus, adv. [com-, together, + 
manus, hand], hand to hand 
com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, join to- 
together; commit, intrust. proelium 
committere, join battle. sē commit- 
tere with dat., trust one’s self to 
commodē, adv. [commodus, fit], com- 
pared commodius, commodissimē, con- 
veniently, fitly 
commodus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit 
com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of com- 
movēō, move], aroused, moved 
com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, in- 
tensive, + parō, prepare], prepare; 
provide, get 
com-pleō, -ere, -plēvi, -plētus [com-, 
inensive, + pleō, fill], fill up 
complexus, -ūs, m. embrace 
com-primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus 
[com-, together, + premō, press], 
press together, grasp, seize 
con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —— [com-, in- 
tensive, + cadō, fall], fall down 
concilium, concīlī, n. meeting, council 
con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus [com-, 
inensive, + claudō, close], shut up, 
close; end, finish 
cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendi, -scensus [com-, 
inensive, + scandō, climb], 
climb up, ascend. nāvem cónnscen- 
dere, embark, go on board
cōn-scribō

contrōversia, -ae, f. dispute, quarrel

con-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -vēnūtus [com-,
together, + veniō, come], come to-
gether, meet, assemble

con-vértō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [com-,
intensive, + vertō, turn], turn

co-orior, -iō, -orūtus sum, dep. verb
[com-, intensive, + orior, rise], rise,
break forth

cōpia, -ae, f. [com-, intensive, + ops,
wealth], abundance, wealth, plenty.
Plur. cōpiae, -ārum, troops

cōquō, -ere, coxi, coctus, cook

Corinthus, -i, m. Corinth, the famous
city on the Isthmus of Corinth

Cornēlia, -ae, f. Cornelia, daughter of
Scipio and mother of the Gracchi

Cornēlius, Cornē'li, m. Cornelius, a
Roman name

cornū, -ūs, n. horn; wing of an army. ̀-
dextīō cornū, on the right wing (§ 466)
corōna, -ae, f. garland, wreath; crown
corōnātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned
corpus, -oris, n. body
cor-ripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus [com-, in-
tensive, + rapiō, seize], seize, grasp
cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. daily
cotidiē, adv. daily

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. thick, crowded,
numerous, frequent

creō, -ere, -āvi, -ātus, make; elect,
appoint

Creōn, -ontis, m. Creon, a king of
Corinth

crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, rise, grow,
increase
Crêta
Crêta, -ae, f. Crete, a large island in the Mediterranean
Crêtaeus, -a, -um, adj. Cretan
crûs, crûris, n. leg
crûstulum, -i, n. pastry, cake
cubîle, -is, n. bed
cultûra, -ae, f. culture, cultivation
cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv. when; since; although (§ 501. 46)
cum, prep. with abl. with (§ 209)
cupidē, adv. [cupidus, desirous], compared cupidius, cupidissimē, eagerly
cupiditâs, -âtis, f. [cupidus, desirous], desire, longing
cupiô, -ere, -îvi or -îi, -îtus, desire, wish. Cf. volô
cûr, adv. why, wherefore
cûra, -ae, f. care, pains; anxiety
cûria, -ae, f. senate house
cûrō, -âre, -âvi, -âtus [cûra, care], care for, attend to, look after
currô, -ere, cucurri, cursus, run
currus, -ûs, m. chariot
cursus, -ûs, m. course
custôdiô, -ère, -îvi, -îtus [custôs, guard], guard, watch

dânsus
dē-cidô, -ere, -cîdi, — [dē, down, + cadî, fall], fall down
decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. tenth
dēclîvis, -e, adj. sloping downward
dē-dô, -ere, -dîdi, -ditus, give up, surrender. sê dêdere, surrender one’s self
dē-dûcô, -ere, -dûxi, -ductus [dē, down, + dûcô, lead], lead down, escort
dē-fendô, -ere, -dî, -fênsus, ward off, repel, defend
dē-ferô, -ferre, -tulî, -latus [dē, down, + ferô, bring], bring down; report, announce (§ 426)
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. tired out, weary
dē-fîciô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus [dē, from, + facî, make], fail, be wanting; revolt from
dē-fîgô, -ere, -fixî, -fixus [dē, down, + figô, fasten], fasten, fix
dē-îcîo, -ere, -îcîi, -ictus [dē, down, + iaciô, hurl], hurl down; bring down, kill
dē-indê, adv. (from thence), then, in the next place
dēlectô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus, delight
dēleô, -ère, -êvî, -êtus, blot out, destroy
dēliberô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus, weigh, deliberate, ponder
dē-ligô, -ere, -lêgî, -lêctus [dē, from, + legô, gather], choose, select

D
Daedalus, -î, m. Dêd’âlus, the supposed inventor of the first flying machine
Dâvus, -î, m. Davus, name of a slave
dē, prep. with abl. down from, from; concerning, about, for (§ 209). quâ dē causâ, for this reason, wherefore
dea, -ae, f. goddess (§ 461. a)
dēbeô, -ère, -ui, -itus [dē, from, + habêô, hold], owe, ought, should
decem, indecl. numeral adj. ten
dē-cernô, -ere, -crêvi, -crêtus [dē, from, + cernô, separate], decide, decree

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. Delphic
dêmissus, -a, -um [part. of dêmissō, send down], downcast, humble
dê-mônstrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus [dē, out, + mônstrô, point], point out, show
dêmum, adv. at last, not till then. tum dêmum, then at last
dênique, adv. at last, finally. Cf. posthêmô
dêns, dentis, m. tooth (§ 247. 2. a)
dênsus, -a, -um, adj. dense, thick
dē-pendeō

dē-pendeō, -ere, —, — [dē, down, + pendeō, hang], hang from, hang down
dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intensive, + plōrō, wail], bewail, deplore
dē-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [dē, down, + pōnē, put], put down
dē-scendō, -ere, -di, -scēnus [dē, down, + scandō, climb], climb down, descend
dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [dē, down, + scribō, write], write down
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, long for
dē-siliō, -āre, -uí, -sultus [dē, down, + salīō, leap], leap down
dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, away from, + spērō, hope], despair
dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [dē, down], look down upon, despise
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [dē, away from, + sum, be], be wanting, lack, with dat. (§ 426)
dēus, -ī, m. god (§ 468)
dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volvūtus [dē, down, + volvō, roll], roll down
dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, down, + vorō, swallow], devour
dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. to the right, right. á dextrō cornū, on the right wing
Diāna, -ae, f. Diana, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo
dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictus (inv. dic), say, speak, tell. Usually introduces indirect discourse (§ 420. a)
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate], dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power
diēs, -ēī or diē, m., sometimes f. in sing., day (§ 467)
dif-ferō, -ferre, distuliī, dīlātus [dis-, apart, + ferō, carry], carry apart;
dif-tribuō

differ. differre inter sē, differ from each other
dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis-, not, + facilis, easy], hard, difficult (§ 307)
difficultātis, -ātis, f. [difficilis, hard], difficulty
dīligerent, adv. [dīligēns, careful], compared diligentius, diligentissimē, industriously, diligently
dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligēns, careful], industry, diligence
dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight, struggle
dī-mittō, -ere, -missi, -missus [dī-, off, + mittō, send], send away, dismiss, disband. dimittere animum in, direct one's mind to, apply one's self to
Diomēdēs, -is, m. Dī-o-mē'dēs, a name
dis-, dī-, a prefix expressing separation, off, apart, in different directions. Often negatives the meaning
dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus [dis-, apart, + cēdō, go], depart from, leave, withdraw, go away
dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis-, apart, + cernō, sīf], separate; distinguish
disciplina, -ae, f. instruction, training, discipline
discipulus, -i, m. [discō, learn], pupil, disciple
discō, -ere, dīcī, —, learn
dis-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [dis-, apart, + quatiō, shake], shatter, dash to pieces
dis-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [dis-, apart, + pōnō, put], put here and there, arrange, station
dis-similis, -e, adj. [dis-, apart, + similis, like], unlike, dissimilar (§ 307)
dis-tribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, divide, distribute
diū

diū, adv., compared diūius, diūitis-
simē, for a long time, long (§ 477)
dō, āre, ēdi, ātus, give. in fugam
dare, put to flight. alicui negōtium
dare, employ some one
doceō, -ere, -uī, -tus, teach, show

doctrina, -ae, f. [doctor, teacher],
teaching, learning, wisdom
dolor, -ōris, m. pain, sorrow
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, 
house], of the house, domestic
domicilium, domici'li, n. dwelling, 
house, abode. Cf. domus
domina, -ae, f. mistress (of the house), 
lady (§ 461)
dominus, -i, m. master (of the house), 
owner, ruler (§ 462)
domus, -ūs, f. house, home. domī, loca-
tive, at home (§ 468)
dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itūs, sleep
dracō, -ōnis, m. serpent, dragon
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hesitate
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo, two], (mov-
ing two ways), doubtful, dubious
du-centī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. two
hundred

dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus (inv. dūc), lead, 
conduct
dum, conj. while, as long as
duo, āuae, duo, numeral adj. two
(§ 479)
duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. twelve
dūrus, -a, -um, adj. hard, tough; harsh,
piteless, bitter
dux, ducis, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead'],
leader, commander

E

ē or ex, prep. with abl. out of, from, 
off, of (§ 209)
eburneus, -a, -um, adj. of ivory
erguptiō

eccē, adv. see! behold! there! here!
ē-ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [ē, out, +
dūcō, lead'], lead out, draw out
ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [ex, thor-
oughly, + faciō, do], work out; make,
cause

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fugi, -fugitūrus [ex,
from, + fugiō, flee], escape
egeō, -ere, -ui, ——, be in need of, lack,
with abl. (§ 501. 32)
egō, pers. pron. I; plur. nōs, we (§ 480)
ē-gradior, -i, ēgressus sum, dep. verb
[ē, out of, + gradior, go], go out, go
forth. ē nāvi ēgradēi, disembark
ē-iciō, -ere, -īciē, -iectus [ē, forth, +
iaciō, hurt], hurt forth, expel

elementum, -i, n., in plur. first prin-
ciples, rudiments
elephantus, -i, m. elephant

Elis, Elīdis, f. E'lis, a district of southern Greece
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy, purchase

enim, conj., never standing first, for,
in fact, indeed. Cf. nam

Ennius, Enī, m. Ennius, the father of
Roman poetry, born 239 B.C.
ēō, īre, ī (ivi), itārīus, go (§ 499)
ēō, adv. to that place, thither

Epirus, -i, f. Epi'rus, a district in the
north of Greece
eques, -itis, m. [equus, horse], horse-
man, cavalryman
equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride'], cavalry
equus, -i, m. horse
e-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ē, out, +
regō, make straight], raise up
e-ripīō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [ē, out of, +
rapīō, seize], seize; rescue
ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ē, forth,
+ rumpō, break], burst forth
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. sally
Latin–English Vocabulary

Erymanthius

Erymanthian, of Erymanthus, a district in southern Greece
et, conj. and also. et ... et, both ... and. Cf. atque, ac, -que
etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [et, also, + iam, now], yet, still, also, besides. Cf. quoque. nōn sōlūm ... sed etiam, not only ... but also
Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. the Etruscans, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy
Europa, -ae, f. Europe
Eurystheus, -i, m. Eurystheus, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece
ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus [ē, out, + vādō, go], go forth, escape
ex, see è
exanimātus, -a, -um [part. of exanimō, put out of breath (anima)], adj. out of breath, tired; lifeless
ex-cipīō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ex, out, + capiō, take], welcome, receive
exemplum, -ī, n. example, model
ex-eō,-ire, -ī,-ītūrus [ex, out, + eō, go], go out, go forth (§ 413)
ex-eerceō, -ere, -ui, -itus [ex, out, + arceō, shut], (shut out), employ, train, exercise, use
exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, train], army
ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, out, + aestimō, reckon], estimate; think, judge (§ 420.c). Cf. arbitrō, putō
ex-orior, -ōri, -ortus sum, dep. verb [ex, forth, + orior, rise], come forth, rise
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. without baggage
ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex, out, + pellō, drive], drive out
ex-piō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, intensive, + piō, atone for], make amends for, atone for
fāma
fāblā, -ae, f. story, tale, fable
facile, adv. [facilis, easy], compared facilius, facilissimē, easily (§ 322)
facilis, -e, adj. [cf. faciō, make], easy, without difficulty (§ 307)
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (inv. fac), make, do; cause, bring about. impetus facere in, make an attack upon. proelium facere, fight a battle. iter facere, make a march or journey. aliquem certōrem facere, inform some one. facere verba prō, speak in behalf of. Passive fīō, fieri, factus sum, be done, happen. certior fieri, be informed
fallō, -ere, fēfellī, falsus, trip, betray, deceive
fāma, -ae, f. report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation
famēs

famēs, -is (abl. famē), f. hunger
familia, -ae, f. servants, slaves; household, family
fascēs, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. fasces (p. 225)
fastigium, fastī'gi, n. top; slope, descent
fātum, -i, n. fate, destiny
faucēs, -ium, f. plur. jaws, throat
faveō, -ere, fāvi, futūrus, be favorable to, favor, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
fēlix, -īcis, adj. happy, lucky
fēmina, -ae, f. woman. Cf. mulier
fera, -ae, f. [ferus, wild], wild beast
ferāx, -ācis, adj. fertile
ferē, adv. about, nearly, almost
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear. graviter or molestē ferre, be annoyed (§ 498)
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], made of iron
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, trust], faithful, true
fidēs, fīdei or fidē, trust, faith; promise, word; protection. in fidem venire, come under the protection. in fidē manère, remain loyal
fīlia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. fīliābus), f. daughter (§ 461. a)
filius, filī (voc. sing. filī), m. son
finēs, -is, m. boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country (§ 243. 1)
finitimēs, -a, -um, adj. [finēs, boundary], adjoining, neighboring. Plur. finitīmē, -ōrum, m. neighbors
fīō, fieri, factus sum, used as passive of fació. See fació (§ 500)
flamma, -ae, f. fire, flame
flōs, flōris, m. flower
fluctus, -ūs, m. [cf. fluō, flow], flood, wave, billow

fūgā

fūmen, -inis, n. [cf. fluō, flow], river (§ 464. 2. b)
fluō, -ere, fluī, fluxus, flow
fluvius, fluvī, m. [cf. fluō, flow], river
fodiō, -ere, fōdiō, fossus, dig
fōns, fontis, m. fountain (§ 247. 2. a)
fōrma, -ae, f. form, shape, appearance; beauty
Formiae, -ārum, f. Formiae, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map
forte, adv. [abl. of fors, chance], by chance
fortis, -e, adj. strong; fearless, brave
fortiter, adv. [fortis, strong], compared fortius, fortissimē, strongly; bravely
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], chance, fate, fortune
forum, -i, n. market place, esp. the Forum Rōmānum, where the life of Rome centered
Forum Appī, Forum of Appius, a town in Latium on the Appian Way
fossa, -ae, f. [cf. fodiō, dig], ditch
frangor, -ōris, m. [cf. frangō, break], crash, noise
frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctus, break
frāter, -tris, m. brother
fremitus, -ūs, m. loud noise
frequentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, attend
frētus, -a, -um, adj. supported, trusting. Usually with abl. of means
frōns, frontis, f. front. à fronte, in front
fructus, -ūs, m. fruit
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. pertaining to grain. rēs frumentāria, grain supplies
frumentum, -i, n. grain
frūstrā, adv. in vain, vainly
fuga, -ae, f. [cf. fugō, flee], flight. in fugam dare, put to flight
fugiō
fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugittūrus, flet, run; avoid, shun
fūmō, -āre, — — — —, smoke
fūnis, -is, m. rope
fūror, -ōris, m. [fūrō, rage], madness. in furōrem incidere, go mad

G
Gāius, Gāi, m. Gaius, a Roman name, abbreviated C., English form Cains
Galba, -ae, m. Galba, a Roman name
galea, -ae, f. helmet
Gallia, -ae, f. Gaul, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. Gallic
gallīna, -ae, f. hen, chicken
Gallus, -i, m. a Gaul
gaudium, gaudi, n. joy
Genāva, -ae, f. Geneva, a city in Switzerland
gēns, gentis, f. [cf. gignō, beget], race, family; people, nation, tribe
genus, -eris, n. kind, variety
Germania, -ae, f. Germany
Germanus, -i, m. a German
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, carry, wear; wage. bellum gerere, wage war. rēs gestae, exploits. bene gerere, carry on successfully
gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj. gladiatorial
gladius, glādi, m. sword
glōria, -ae, f. glory, fame
Gracchus, -ī, m. Gracchus, name of a famous Roman family
gracilis, -e, adj. slender (§ 307)
Graeca, -ōrum, n. plur. Greek writings, Greek literature
Graecē, adv. in Greek
Graecia, -ae, f. Greece
grammaticus, -i, m. grammarian

honestus
grātia, -ae, f. thanks, gratitude
grātus, -a, -um, adj. acceptable, pleasing. Often with dat. (§ 501.16)
gravis, -ē, adj. heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty
graviter, adv. [gravis, heavy], compared gravis, gravissimē, heavily; greatly, seriously. graviter ferre, bear ill, take to heart
gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernā, pilot], pilot

H
habēna, -ae, f. halter, rein
habeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, have, hold; regard, consider, deem
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. habeō, have], dwell, abide, inhabit. Cf. incolō, vivō
hāc-tenus, adv. thus far
Helvētii, -ōrum, m. the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe
Herculēs, -is, m. Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength
Hesperidēs, -um, f. the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples
hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. this (of mine); as pers. pron. he, she, it (§ 481)
hīc, adv. here
hiems, -emis, f. winter
hinc, adv. [hic, here], from here, hence
Hippolytē, -ēs, f. Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons
ho-dīē, adv. [modified form of hōc diē, on this day], to-day
homō, -inis, m. and f. (human being), man, person
honestus, -a, -um, adv. [honor, honor], respected, honorable
honor

honor, -ōris, m. honor
hōra, -ae, f. hour
Horātius, Horā’ti, m. Horatius, a
Roman name
horribilis, -e, adj. terrible, horrible
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, urge, incite, exhort, encourage
§ 493
hortus, -i, m. garden
hospitalium, hospitii, n. [hospes, host], hospitality
hostis, -is, m. and f. enemy, foe
§ 465. a)
humilis, -e, adj. low, humble § 307
Hydra, -ae, f. the Hydra, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules

I
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl
iam, adv. now, already. nec iam, and no longer
Iāniculum, -ī, n. the Janiculum, one of the hills of Rome
iānua, -ae, f. door
ibi, adv. there, in that place
Icarus, -i, m. I'carus, the son of Dædalus
ictus, -ūs, m. [cf. icō, strike], blow
īdem, e’dam, idem, demonstrative pron. [is + ēm], same § 481
idoenus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit
igitur, conj., seldom the first word, therefore, then. Cf. itaque
ignis, -is, m. fire §§ 243. 1; 247. 2. a; 465, 1
ignītus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + (g)nōtus, known], unknown, strange
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. that (yonder); as pers. pron. he, she, it § 481
illec, adv. [cf. ille], yonder, there

in-cautus
im-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [in, against, + mittō, send], send against; let in
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, upon, + mola, meal], sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice
im-mortālis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + mortālis, mortal], immortal
im-mortālitās, -ātis, f. [immortālis, immortal], immortality
im-parātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + parātus, prepared], unprepared
impedimentum, -i, n. [impedīō, hinder], hindrance; in plur. baggage
impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of im-pedīō, hinder], hindered, burdened
im-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [in, against, + pellō, strike], strike against; impel, drive, propel
imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], general
imperium, impe’rī, n. [imperō, command], command, order; realm, empire; power, authority
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, command, order. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose § 501. 41.
With acc. object, levy, impose
impetus, -ūs, m. attack. impetum facere in, make an attack upon
im-poñō, -ere, -posui, -positus [in, upon, + poñō, place], place upon; impose, assign
in, prep. with acc. into, to, against, at, upon, towards; with abl. in, on. in reliquum tempus, for the future
in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English un-, in-
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cautus, careful], off one’s guard
incendium, incendiō, n. flame, fire. Cf. ignis, flamma

in-cenō, -ere, -di, -cēnus, set fire to, burn

in-cidō, -ere, -cidi, —— [in, in, on, + cadō, fall], fall in, fall on; happen.
   in furōrem incidere, go mad

in-cipīō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [in, on, + capiō, take], begin

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cognitus, known], unknown

in-colō, -ere, -ui, —— [in, in, + colō, dwell], inhabit; live

incolumis, -e, adj. sound, safe, uninjured, unharmed

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + crēdibilis, to be believed], incredible

inde, from that place, thence

induō, -ere, -ui, -ütus, put on

indūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of induō, put on], clothed

in-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus [in, into, + eō, go],
   go into; enter upon, begin, with acc.
   (§ 413)

in-fāns, -fantis, adj. [in-, not, + *fāns, speaking], not speaking. As a noun, m. and f. infant

in-fēlix, -icīus, adj. [in-, not, + fēlix, happy], unhappy, unlucky

infēnsus, -a, -um, adj. hostile

in-ferō, inferre, in'tulī, inlā'tus [in, against, + ferō, bear], bring against or upon, inflict, with acc. and dat.
   (§ 501. 15). bellum inferre, with dat., make war upon

infērus, -a, -um, adj. low, below
   (§ 312)

in-finītus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + finītus, bounded], boundless, endless

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + firmus, strong], weak, infirm

in-struō, -ere, -strōxi, -strūctus [in, on, + strūō, build], draw up

ingenium, inge'nī, n. talent, ability

ingēns, -entis, adj. vast, huge, enormous, large. Cf. magnus

in-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [in, in, + gradior, walk], advance, enter

in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + amicus, friendly], hostile. As a noun, inimicus, -ī, m. enemy, foe. Cf. hostis

initium, ini'ti, entrance, beginning

initus, -a, -um, part. of inēō. initā
   aestāte, at the beginning of summer

iniūria, -ae, f. [in, against, + iūs, law],
   injustice, wrong, injury. aliqui in-
   iūriās inferre, inflict wrongs upon
   some one

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], want, need, lack

in-opināns, -antis, adj. [in-, not, + opināns, thinking], not expecting, taken by surprise

inquit, said he, said she. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation

in-rigō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, irrigate, water

in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus [in, into, + rumpō, break], burst in, break in

in-rūō, -ere, -rūi, —— [in, in, + rūō, rush], rush in

in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep.
   verb [in, on, + sequor, follow], follow on, pursue

in-signe, -is, n. badge, decoration
   (§ 405. b)

insignis, -ē, adj. remarkable, noted

instāns, -antis, adj. [part. of insto, be at hand], present, immediate

in-stō, -äre, -stīti, -statūrus [in, upon, + stō, stand], stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on

instrumentum, -i, n. instrument

in-struō, -ere, -strōxi, -strūctus [in, on, + strūō, build], draw up
insula

iste, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. that (of yours), he, she, it (§ 481)

ita, adv. so, thus. Cf. sic and tam

Italia, -ae, f. Italy

ita-que, conj. and so, therefore

item, adv. also

iter, itineris, n. journey, march, route; way, passage (§§ 247. 1. a; 468). iter dare, give a right of way, allow to pass.

iter facere, march (see p. 159)

iubeō, -ère, iussi, iussus, order, command. Usually with the infin. and subj. acc. (§ 213)

iūdex, -icus, m. and f. judge (§ 464. 1)

iūdicō, -ère, -avi, -ātus [iūdex, judge], judge, decide (§ 420. c)

Iūlia, -ae, Julia, a Roman name

Iūlius, Iūli, m. Julius, a Roman name

iungō, -ère, iunxi, iunctus, join; yoke, harness

Iūnō, -ōnis, f. June, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter

Iuppiter, Iovis, m. Jupiter, the supreme god

iūrō, -ère, -āvi, -ātus, swear, take an oath

iussus, -a, -um, part. of iubeō, ordered

lacus

L.

L., abbreviation for Lūcius

labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of labefaciō, cause to shake], shaken, weakened, ready to fall

Labiēnus, -i, m. La-biēnus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants

labor, -ūris, m. labor, toil

labōrō, -ère, -āvi, -ātus [labor, labor], labor; suffer, be hard pressed

lacrima, -ae, f. tear

lacus, -ūs (dat. and abl. plur. lacubus), m. lake
laetē, adv. [laetus, glad], compared laetius, laetissimē, gladly
laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, glad], joy
laetus, -a, -um, adj. glad, joyful
lapis, -idis, m. stone (§§ 247.2. a; 464.1)
Lār, Laris, m.; plur. Larēs, -um (rarely -ium), the Larēs or household gods
lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], compared lātius, lātissimē, widely
Latīnē, adv. in Latin. Latīnē loqui, to speak Latin
lātītūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width
Lātōna, -ae, f. Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana
lātus, -a, -um, adj. wide
lātus, -eris, n. side, flank. ab utroque laterē, on each side
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus, praise], praise
laurea, -ae, f. laurel
laureātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned with laurel
laus, laudis, f. praise
lectulus, -ī, m. couch, bed
lēgātus, -i, m. ambassador; lieutenant
legiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. legō, gather], (body of soldiers), legion, about 3600 men (§ 464.2. a)
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. legionary.
Plur. legiōnāriī, -ōrum, m. the soldiers of the legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
lēnīs, -e, adj. gentle, smooth, mild
lēniter, adv. [lēnīs, gentle], compared lēnius, lēnissimē, gently
Lentulus, -ī, m. Lentulus, a Roman family name
leō, -ōnis, m. lion
Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj. Lernaeus, of Lerna, in southern Greece
Lesbia, -ae, f. Lesbia, a girl’s name
magis
levīs, -e, adj. light
lēx, légis, f. measure, law
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], compared libertius, libertissimē, willingly, gladly
liber, -era, -erum, adj. free (§ 469. b)
libēri, -īrum, m. [liber, free], children
liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber, free], set free, release, liberate
libertās, -ātis, f. [liber, free], freedom, liberty
lictor, -ōris, m. lictor (p. 225)
limus, -i, m. mud
littera, -ae, f. a letter of the alphabet;
in plur. a letter, epistle
litus, -oris, n. seashore, beach
locus, -i, m. (plur. loci and loca, m. and n.), place, spot
longē, adv. [longus, long], comp. longius, longissimē, a long way off; by far
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], distant, remote
longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long], length
longus, -a, -um, adj. long
loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, dep. verb, talk, speak
lōrica, -ae, f. [lōrum, thong], coat of mail, corselet
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play
lūdus, -i, m. play; school, the elementary grades. Cf. schola
lūna, -ae, f. moon
lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.), light.
prima lūx, daybreak
Lydiā, -ae, f. Lydia, a girl’s name

M
M., abbreviation for Mārcus
magicus, -a, -um, adj. magic
magis, adv. in comp. degree [magnus, great], more, in a higher degree (§ 323)
magister, -trī, m. master, commander; teacher
magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, master], magistracy; magistrate
magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, size
magnopere, adv. [abl. of magnum opus], compared magis, maximē, greatly, exceedingly (§323)
magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, great, large; strong, loud (§311)
maior, maius, -ōris, adj., comp. of magnus, greater (§311)
maiōrēs, -um, m. plur. of maiōr, ancestors
mālō, mālle, mālūi, — [magis, more, + volō, wish], wish more, prefer (§497)
malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, bad, evil (§311)
māndō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manus, hand, + dō, put], (put in hand), intrust; order, command
manēō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, stay, remain, abide
Mānlius, Mānli, m. Manlius, a Roman name
mānsuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of mānsuēscō, tame], tame
manus, -ūs, f. hand; force, band
Mārcus, -i, m. Marcus, Mark, a Roman first name
mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), sea. mare tenēre, be out to sea
margō, -inis, m. edge, border
marītus, -ī, m. husband
Marius, Mari, m. Marius, a Roman name, esp. C. Marius, the general.
Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. of Mars, esp. the Campus Martius
māter, -trīs, f. mother
mātrimōnium, -mōnōˈni, n. marriage. in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten. Cf. contendo, properō 
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. ripe, mature
maximē, adv. in superl. degree [maximus, greatest], compared magnopere, magis, maximē, especially, very much (§323)
maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of magnus, greatest, extreme (§311)
medius, -a, -um, adj. middle part; middle, intervening
melior, -ius, -ōris, adj., comp. of bonus, better (§311)
melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, better (§323)
memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], memory. memoriae tenēre, remember
mēns, mentis, f. mind. Cf. animus
mēnsis, -is, m. month (§247.2.a)
mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercator, trade], trader, merchant
meridīanus, -a, -um, adj. [merēdiēs, noon], of midday
meridēs, — (acc. -em, abl. -ē), m. [medius, mid, + diēs, day], noon
metus, -ūs, m. fear, dread
meus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. my, mine (§98)
mīlis, -itis, m. soldier (§464.1)
militāris, -e, adj. [miles, soldier], military. rēs militāris, science of war
militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [miles, soldier], serve as a soldier
mīlle, plur. mīlia, -ium, numeral adj. and subst. thousand (§479)
minimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, least; very little; by no means (§323)
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

minimus
minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, least, smallest (§ 311)
minor, minus, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, smaller, less (§ 311)
Mínōs, -ōs, m. Minos, a king of Crete minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, less (§ 323)
Minyae, -ārum, m. the Minyae, a people of Greece
mirabilis, -e, adj. [miror, wonder at], wonderful, marvelous
miror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mirus, wonderful], wonder, marvel, admire
mirus, -a, -um, adj. wonderful
Misénum, -ī, Misēnum, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map
miser, -era, -erum, adj. wretched, unhappy, miserable
missus, -a, -um, part. of mittō, sent
mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send
modicus, -a, -um [modus, measure], modest, ordinary
modo, adv. [abl. of modus, measure, with shortened 0], only, merely, just now. modo ... modo, now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes
modus, -ī, m. measure; manner, way; kind
moenia, -īum, n. plur. [cf. mūniō, fortify], walls, ramparts
moestē, adv. [moestus, troublesome], compared moestus, moestissimē, annoyingly. moestē ferre, to be annoyed
moestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying, unpleasant (§ 501. 16)

nauta
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, remind, advise, warn (§ 489)
mōns, montis, m. mountain (§ 247. 2. a)
mōnstrum, -i, n. monster
mora, -ae, f. delay
moror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mora, delay], delay, linger; impede
mors, mortis, f. [cf. morior, diē], death
mōs, mōris, m. custom, habit
mōtus, -ūs, m. [cf. moveō, move], motion, movement. terrae mōtus, earthquake
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move
mox, adv. soon, presently
mulier, -eris, f. woman
multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], multitude
multum (multō), adv. [multus, much], compared plūs, plūrimum, much (§ 477)
multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plūs, plūrimum, much (§ 311)
mūniō, -īre, -iī or -iō, -ītus, fortify, defend
mūnītiō, -onis, f. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification
mūrus, -i, m. wall. Cf. moenia
mūsica, -ae, f. music

N
nam, conj. for. Cf. enim
nam-que, conj., a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or explanation, for, and in fact; seeing that
nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tell, relate
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, dep. verb, be born, spring from
nātūra, -ae, f. nature
nātus, part. of nāscor
nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis. ship], sailor
nāvālis
nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], naval
nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n. ship, boat
nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvis, ship, + agē, drive], sail, cruise
nāvis, -is (abl. -i or -e), f. ship
§ 243. 1. nāvem cōnsendere, embark, go on board. nāvem solvere, set sail. nāvis longa, man-of-war
nē, conj. and adv. in order that not, that (with verbs of fearing), lest; not. nē ... quidem, not even
-nē, interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§ 16, 210). Cf. nōnne and num
nec or neque, conj. [nē, not, + que, and], and not, nor. nec ... nec or neque ... neque, neither ... nor
necessārius, -a, -um, adj. needful, necessary
necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. nex, death], kill. Cf. interficēō, occīdō, trucidō
negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deny, say not
§ 420. a
negōtium, negō'ti, n. [nec, not, + ōtium, ease], business, affair, matter. alicui negōtium dare, to employ some one
Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj. Nēme'ān, of Nēmē'a, in southern Greece
nēmō, dat. nēmini (gen. nūllius, abl. nūllō, supplied from nūllus), m. and f. [nē, not, + homō, man], (not a man), no one, nobody
Neptūnus, -i, m. Neptune, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter
neque, see nec
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trius, dat. -tri), adj. neither (of two) ($108$
ne-ve, conj. adv. and not, and that not, and lest
nihil, n. indecl. [nē, not, + hilum, a whirl], nothing. nihil posse, to have no power
num
nihilum, -i, n., see nihil
Niobē, -ēs, f. Nī'obe, the queen of Thebes whose children were destroyed by Apollo and Diana
nisi, conj. [nē, not, + sī, if], if not, unless, except
nōbilis, -e, adj. well known; noble
nōceō, -ēre, -ūi, -ūtūrus [cf. necō, kill], hurt, injure, with dat. ($501.14$
noctū, abl. used as adv. [cf. nox, night], at night, by night
Nōla, -ae, f. Nōla, a town in central Campania. See map
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — [ne, not, + volō, wish], not to wish, be unwilling ($497$
no men, -inis, n. [cf. nōscō, know], (means of knowing), name
nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nōmen, name], name, call. Cf. appellō, vocō
nō, adv, [nē, not, + ūnum, one], not, nōn sōlum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also
nōn-dum, adv. not yet
nōn-ne, interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, not? ($210$). Cf. -ne and num
nōs, pers. pron. we (see ego) ($480$
no ster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. our, ours. Plur. nostri, -ōrum, m. our men ($98$
novem, indecl. numeral adj. nine
novus, -a, -um, adj. new. novae reś, a revolution
nox, noctis, f. night. multā nocte, late at night
nūllus, -a, -um (gen. -lus, dat. -i) adj. [nē, not, + ūllus, any], not any, none, no ($108$
num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer ($210$). Cf. -ne and nōnne. In indir. questions, whether
numerus
numerus, -i, m. number
numquam, adv. [nē, not, + umquam, ever], never
nunc, adv. now. Cf. iam
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius, messenger], report, announce (§ 420. a)
nūntius, nūntiō, m. messenger
nūper, adv. recently, lately, just now
nympha, -ae, f. nymph

0
ob, prep. with acc. on account of. In compounds it often means in front of, against, or is intensive. quam ob rem, for this reason (§ 340)
obses, -idēs, m. and f. hostage
ob-sideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus [ob, against, + sedēō, sitō], besiege
obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tētūs [ob, against, + teneō, hold], possess, occupy, hold
occāsiō, -onis, f. favorable opportunity, favorable moment
occāsus, -ūs, m. going down, setting
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisus [ob, down, + caedēō, strike], strike down; cut down, kill. Cf. interficiō, necō
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, completely, + capiō, take], seize, take possession of, occupy. Cf. rapiō
oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob, against, + currō, run], run towards; meet, with dat. (§ 426)
oceanus, -i, m. the ocean
octō, indecl. numeral adj. eight
oculus, -i, m. eye
officium, offi'ciō, n. duty
ōlim, adv. formerly, once upon a time
ōmen, -inis, n. sign, token, omen
ō-mittō, -ere, -miśi, -missus [ob, over, past, + mittō, send], let go, omit.
cōnsilium omittere, give up a plan

orior
omnīnō, adv. [omnis, all], altogether, wholly, entirely
omnis, -e, adj. all, every. Cf. tōtus
onerāria, -ae, f. [onus, load], with nāvis expressed or understood, merchant vessel, transport
onus, -eris, n. load, burden
opiniō, -onis, f. [ōpinor, suppose], opinion, supposition, expectation
oppidānus, -i, m. [oppidum, town], townsman
oppidum, -i, n. town, stronghold
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, opportune, favorable
op-prīmō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, against, + premō, press], press against, crush; surprise
oppugnātiō, -onis, f. storming, assault
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, against, + pugnō, fight], fight against, assault, storm, assail
optimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, very well, best of all (§ 323)
optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared bonus, melius, optimus, best, most excellent (§ 311)
opus, -eris, n. work, labor, task (§ 464. 2. b)
ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō, speak], oracle
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak], orator
orbis, -is, m. ring, circle. orbis terrārum, the earth, world
orbita, -ae, f. [orbis, wheel], rut
Orcus, -i, m. Orcus, the lower world
ōrdō, -inis, m. row, order, rank (§ 247. 2. a)
origō, -onis, f. [orior, rise], source, origin
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, dep. verb, arise, rise; begin; spring, be born
Latin–English Vocabulary

ornamentum
ornamentum, -i, n. [ornō, fit out],
ornament, jewel
ornatus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of ornō, fit out], fitted out; adorned
ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fit out, adorn

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), peace
pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, cattle], money
pedes, -itis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot; by land
peiōr, peius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worse (§ 311)
pellis, -is, f. skin, hide
penna, -ae, f. feather
per, prep. with acc. through, by means of, on account of. In composition it often has the force of thoroughly, completely, very (§ 340)
percussus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of percutiō, strike through], pierced
per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [per, through, + dūcō, lead], lead through.
fossam perducerē, to construct a ditch
per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [per, very, + exiguus, small], very small, very short
perfidus, -a, -um, adj. faithless, treacherous, false
per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [per, through, + frangō, break], shatter
pergō, -ere, perrexī, perrectus [per, through, + regō, conduct], go on, proceed, hasten
periculum, -i, n. trial, test; danger
peristylium, -i, n. peristyle, an open court with columns around it
peritus, -a, -um, adj. skillful
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. perpetual
Persēus, -eī, Persus, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter and Danae
persōna, -ae, f. part, character, person
per-suādeō, -ere, -suāsi, -suāsus [per, thoroughly, + suādeō, persuade], persuade, advise, with dat. (§ 501. 14), often with an object clause of purpose (§ 501. 41)

P
P., abbreviation for Públius
paene, adv. nearly, almost
paludāmentum, -i, n. military cloak
palūs, -ūdis, f. swamp, marsh
pānis, -is, m. bread
pār, paris, adj. equal (§ 471. 111)
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of parō, prepare], prepared, ready
parcō, -ere, peperēci (parsī), parsūrus, spare, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
pāreō, -ere, -uī, —, obey, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare for; prepare; provide, procure
pars, partis, f. part, share; side, direction
parum, adv., compared minus, minimē, too little, not enough (§ 323)
parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor, minimus, small, little (§ 311)
passus, -ūs, m. step, pace. mille passuum, thousand paces, mile (331. b)
pateō, -ere, patui, —, lie open, be open; stretch, extend
pater, -tris, m. father (§ 464. 2. a)
pattior, -i, passus sum, dep. verb, bear, suffer, allow, permit
patria, -ae, f. [cf. pater, father], fatherland, (one’s) country
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, only a few
paullisper, adv. for a little while
paullō, adv. by a little, little
paullum adv. a little, somewhat
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**per-terreō**
per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [per, thoroughly, + terreō, frighten], thoroughly terrify, alarm

**per-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus** [per, through, + veniō, come], arrive, reach, come to

pēs, pedis, m. foot. pedem referre, retreat (§ 247. 2. a)

**pessimus, -a, -um** adj. in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worst (§ 311)

petō, -ere, -īvi or -iī, -itus, strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to.
Cf. postulō, quaerō, rogō

Pharsālus, -i, f. Pharsālōs or Pharsalōs, a town in Thessaly, near which Cæsar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.

**philosophia, -ae, f. philosophy**

philosophus, -ī, m. philosopher

pictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of pingō, paint], colored, variegated

**pilum, -ī, n. spear, javelin (§ 462. b)**

**piscīna, -ae, f. [piscis, fish], fish pond**

**piscis, -is, m. fish**

**pistor, -ōris, m. baker**

placeō, -ère, -uī, -itus, please, be pleasing, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

plānitiēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level], plain

plānus, -a, -um, adj. level, flat

plēnus, -a, -um, full

**plūrīnum, adv. in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrīnum, very much. plūrīnum valēre, be most influential (§ 322)**

plūrīmus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrīmus, most, very many (§ 311)

plūs, plūris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrīmus; sing. n. as substantive, more; plur. more, several (§ 311)

**potentia**

pluteus, -i, m. shield, parapet

poeña, -ae, f. punishment, penalty

poēta, -ae, m. poet

pompa, -ae, f. procession

Pompēii, -ōrum, m. Pompeii, a city of Campania. See map

Pompēius, Pompēiī, m. Pompey, a Roman name

pōnūm, -i, n. apple

pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, put, place.

casta pōnerē, pitch camp

pōns, pontis, m. bridge (§ 247. 2. a)

popīna, -ae, f. restaurant

populus, -ī, m. people

Porsena, -ae, m. Porsena, king of Ætruria, a district of Italy. See map

porta, -ae, f. gate, door

portō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, carry

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate], harbor

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, have, own, possess

possūm, posse, potui, ——, irreg. verb [potēs, able, + sum, I am], be able, can (§ 495). nihil posse, have no power

**post, prep. with acc. after, behind (§ 340)**

**postea, adv. [post, after, + eā, this], afterwards**

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared posterior, postrēmus or postumus, following; next (§ 312)

postquam, conj. after, as soon as

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of postrēmus, last], at last, finally. Cf. dēmum, dēnique (§ 322)

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō, next, + diē, day], on the next day

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, demand, require. Cf. petō, quaerō, rogō

potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, able], might, power, force
praebō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [praebō, forth, + habēō, hold], offer, give
praedā, -ae, f. booty, spoil, plunder
praedīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus [praebō, before, + dīcō, tell], foretell, predict
praeficō, -ere, -feci, -fectus [praebō, before, + facīō, make], place in command, with acc. and dat. (§ 501. 15)
praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [praebō, forward, + mittō, send], send forward
praesūl, praēmi, n. reward, prize
praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of praerumpō, break off], broken off, steep
praesēns, -entis, adj. present, immediate
praesertim, adv. especially, chiefly
praesidium, praesiōnem, n. guard, garrison, protection
praestō, -āre, -stītū, -stitus [praebō, before, + stō, stand], (stand before), excel, surpass, with dat. (§ 501. 15); show, exhibit
praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [praebō, before, + sum, be], be over, be in command of, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
praeter, prep. with acc. beyond, contrary to (§ 340)
praetereā, adv. [praetere, besides, + cā, this], in addition, besides, moreover
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. bordered, edged
praetōrium, praetōrī, n. praetorium
prandium, prandi, n. luncheon
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass (prex, precis), f. prayer
primō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the beginning (§ 322)
primūm, adv. [primus, first], first, quam primūm, as soon as possible
primus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared prior, primus, first (§ 315)
prō, prep. with abl. before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as (§ 209). In composition, forth, forward
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [prō, forward, + cēdō, go], go forward, proceed
procul, adv. far, afar off
prō-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -currus [prō, forward, + currō, run], run forward
proelium, proelī, n. battle, combat. proelium committere, join battle. proelium facere, fight a battle
profectio, -onis, f. departure
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, dep. verb, set out, march. Cf. ēgressor, exeō
prō-gredior, -i, -gressus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + gradior, go]; go forth, proceed, advance. Cf. pergō, prōcīdō
prōgressus, see prōgredior
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [prō, forth, away from, + habeō, hold], keep away from, hinder, prevent
prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō, forward, + moveō, move], move forward, advance
prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, forth, + nūntiō, announce], proclaim, declare
prope, adv., compared propius, proxime, nearly. Prep. with acc. near
prō-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [prō, forth, + pellō, drive], drive forth; move, impel
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

properō
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [properus, quick], go quickly, hasten. Cf. contendō, mātūrō

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring

propior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. proximus, nearer (§ 315)

propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearer (§ 323)

propter, prep. with acc. on account of, because of (§ 340)

prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [prō, forth, + scribō, write], proclaim, publish. Cf. prōnuntiō

prō-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + sequor, follow], escort, attend

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus [prō, for, + sum, be], be useful, benefit, with dat. (§§ 496; 501. 15)

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus [prō, in front, + tegō, cover], cover in front, protect

prōvincia, -ae, f. territory, province

proximē, adv. in superl. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearest, next; last, most recently (§ 323)

proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared propior, proximus, nearest, next (§ 315)

publīcus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the people, public. rēs pūblica, the commonwealth

puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer, boy], girl, maiden

puer, -eri, m. boy; slave (§ 462. c)

pugna, -ae, f. fight, battle. Cf. proelium

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna, battle], fight. Cf. contendō, dimicō

qui

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. beautiful, pretty (§§ 469. b; 304)
Pūlō, -onis, m. Pulio, a centurion
pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, strike, beat
puppis, -is [acc. -im, abl. -i], f. stern of a ship, deck
pūrē, adv. [pūrus, pure], comp. pūrius, purely
pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cleanse, clean
purpureus, -a, -um, adj. purple, dark red
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon, think (§ 420, c). Cf. arbitror, existimō

Pýthia, -ae, f. Pýthia, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

Q

quā dē causā, for this reason, wherefore
quā rē, therefore, for this reason
quae rō, -ere, -sivī, -sitūs, seek, ask, inquire. Cf. petō, postulō, rogō
quālis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. of what sort, what kind of. tālis...
quālis, such... as
quam, adv. how; after a comparative, than; with a superlative, translated as... as possible. quam primum, as soon as possible
quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam, how], how great, how much. tantus...
quantus, as great as
quārtus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [quattuor, four], fourth
quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. four
quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. fourteen
-que, conj., enclitic, and (§ 16). Cf. ac, atque, et
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj who, which, what, that (§ 482)
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quia
quia, conj. because. Cf. quod
quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), indef. pron. and adj. a certain one, a certain, a ($\S$ 485)
quidem, adv. to be sure, certainly, indeed. nè... quidem, not even
quiēs, -ētis, f. rest, repose
quiētus, -a, -um, adj. quiet, restful
quīndecim, indecl. numeral adj. fifteen
quīngenti, -ae, -a, numeral adj. five hundred
quinque, indecl. numeral adj. five
quinquus, -a, -um, numeral adj. fifth
quis (qui), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj. who? what? which? ($\S$ 483)
quīs (qui), qua (qua). quid (quad), indef. pron. and adj., used after si, nisi, nē, num, any one, anything, some one, something, any, some ($\S$ 484)
quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. any one (at all), anything (at all) ($\S$ 486)
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quoque), indef. pron. and adj. each, each one, every ($\S$ 484)
quō, interrog. and rel. adv. whither, where
quō, conj. in order to, that, with comp. degree ($\S$ 350)
quod, conj. because, in that. Cf. quia
quoque, conj., following an emphatic word, also, too. Cf. etiam
quot-annīs, adv. [quot, how many + annus, year], every year, yearly
quotiēns, interrog. and rel. adv. how often? as often as

R
rādīx, -īcis, f. root; foot
rapiō, -ere, -ui, -tus, seize, snatch
re-linquō
rārō, adv. [rārus, rarē], rarely
rārus, -a, -um, adj. rare
re- or re-, an inseparable prefix, again, back, anew, in return
rebellīō, -ōnis, f. renewal of war, rebellion
recēns, -entis, adj. recent
re-cipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-, back, + capīō, take], take back, receive. sē recipere, withdraw, retreat
re-clinātus, -a, -um, part. of reclinō, leaning back
re-creātus, -a, -um, part. of recreō, refreshed
rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of regō, keep straight], straight, direct
re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ätus, refuse
red-āctus, -a, -um, part. of redigō, reduced, subdued
red-eō, -īre, -ītus [red-, back, + eō, go], go back, return ($\S$ 413). Cf. revertō
reditus, -ūs, m. [cf. redeō, return], return, going back
re-ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [re-, back, + dūcō, lead], lead back
re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus [re-, back, + ferō, bear], bear back; report. pedem referre, withdraw, retreat
re-fićiō, -ere, -ficēi, -fectus [re-, again, + faciō, make], make again, repair. sē reficere, refresh one's self
rēgīna, -ae, f. [rēx, king], queen
regiō, -ōnis, f. region, district
rēgnum, -ī, n. sovereignty; kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus [cf. rēx, king], govern, rule ($\S$ 490)
re-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [re-, back, + iaciō, hurl], hurl back; throw away
re-linquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus [re-, behind, + linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon
reliquus
reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. relinquiō, leave], left over, remaining. As a noun, plur. the rest
remōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of removeō, remove], remote, distant
re-moveō, -ōve, -mōvi, -mōtus [re-, back, + moveō, move], remove
rēmus, -i, m. oar
re-periō, -ire, reperī, repertus, find
re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-, back, + portō, carry], carry back, bring back, win, gain
rēs, rei, f. thing, business, matter, deed, event, circumstance (§ 467). quam ob rem, for this reason. rēs adversae, adversity. rēs frumentāria, grain supplies. rēs gestae, exploits. rēs militāris, science of war. rēs pública, the commonwealth. rēs secundae, prosperity
re-spīndō, -ere, -scīdī, -scissus [re-, back, + spīndō, cut], cut off, cut down
re-sistō, -ere, -stīti, — [re-, back, + sistō, cause to stand\], oppose, resist, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
re-spondeō, -ere, -spondī, -sponsus [re-, in return, + spondeō, promise], answer, reply (§ 420. a)
re-vertō, -ere, -i, —, or dep. verb re-vertor, -i, -sus sum [re-, back, + vertō, turn], turn back, return. Usually active in the perf. system
re-vincīō, -ire, -vīnxī, -vīctus [re-, back, + vincīō, bind\], fasten
rēx, regis, m. [cf. regō, rulē], king
Rhēnus, -i, m. the Rhine, a river of Germany
rīpa, -ae, f. bank
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask. Cf. petō, postulō, quaerō
sapiēns
Rōma, -ae, f. Rome. See map
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. a Roman
rosa, -ae, f. rose
rōstrum, -i, n. beak of a ship. In plur., the rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum
rota, -ae, f. wheel
Rubicō, -onis, m. the Rubicon, a river in northern Italy. See map
rūmor, -ōris, m. report, rumor
rūrus, adv. [for reversus, turned back], again, in turn
rūs, rūris (locative abl. rūri, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. the country (§ 501. 36. 1). Cf. ager, patria, terra

S
Sabinus, -a, -um, adj. Sabine. As a noun, m. and f. a Sabine. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map
sacrum, -i, n. [sacer, consecrated], something consecrated, sacrifice; usually in plur., religious rites
saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissimē, often, frequently
saevus, -a, -um, adj. cruel, savage
sagitta, -ae, f. arrow
saliō, -ire, -i, saltus, jump
salūs, -ūtis, f. safety; health. salūtem dicere, send greetings
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salūs, health], greet, salute
salvē, inv. of salveō, hail, greetings
sanguis, -inis, m. blood (§ 247. 2. a)
sānitās, -ātis, f. [sānus, sound\], health, sanity
sapiēns, -entis, adj. [part. of sapiō, be wise\], wise, sensible
satis

satis, adv. and indecl. noun, enough, sufficient, sufficiently

saxum, -i, n. rock, stone

scelus, -eris, n. crime, sin

scéptrum, -i, n. scepter

schola, -ae, f. school, the higher grades. Cf. lúdus

scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, knowing], skill, knowledge, science

scindō, -ere, scindī, scissus, cut, tear

scīō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, know (§ 420. b).

Cf. cognōscō

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write

scitum, -i, n. shield, buckler

sē, see sui

sēcum = sē + cum

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful. réa secundae, prosperity

sed, conj. but, on the contrary. nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . .

but also

sēdecim, indecl. numeral adj. sixteen

sēdēō, -ere, sēdī, sessus, sit

semper, adv. always, forever

senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. senex, old], council of elders, senate

sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (§ 420. d). Cf. intellegō, vīōē

septem, indecl. numeral adj. seven

septimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. seventh

sequor, -i, secūtus sum, dep. verb, follow (§ 493)

serpēns, -entis, f. [serpō, crawl], serpent, snake

sertae, -ārum, f. plur. wreaths, garlands

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, slave], slavery, servitude

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save, rescue, keep

servus, -i, m. slave

sēsē, emphatic for sē

sex, indecl. numeral adj. six

Sextus, -i, m. Sextus, a Roman first name

si, conj. if

sic, adv. thus, in this way. Cf. ita, tam

Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily. See map

sic-ut, just as, as if

signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard, + fērō, bear], standard bearer (p. 224)

signum, -i, n. ensign, standard; signal

sīlva, -ae, f. wood, forest

similis, -e, adj. compared similior, simillimus, like, similar (§ 307)

simul, adv. at the same time

simul ac or simul atque, conj. as soon as

sine, prep. with abl. without (§ 209)

singulī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. one at a time, single (§ 334)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. left

Sinuessa, -ae, f. Sinuessa'sa, a town in Campania. See map

sitīs, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i, no plur.), f. thirst

situs, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sīnō, seat], situated, placed, lying

socius, soci, m. comrade, ally

sōl, sōlis (no gen. plur.), m. sun

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep. verb, be wont, be accustomed

sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. disturbed, anxious

sōlum, adv. [sōlus, alone], alone, only.

nōn sūlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also

sōlus, -a, -um (gen. -īs, dat. -i), adj. alone, only (§ 108)

solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, loosen, unbind. nāvem solvere, set sail
somnus, -i, m. sleep
soror, -dris, f. sister
spatium, spati, n. space, distance; time; opportunity
spectaculum, -i, n. [specto, look at], show, spectacle
specto, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, look at, witness
spērō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs, hope],
    hope, expect (§ 420. c)
spēs, spei, f. hope (§ 273. 2)
splendidē, adv. [splendidus], com-
    pared splendidius, splendidissimē,
    splendidly, handsomely
splendidus, -a, -um, adj. brilliant,
    gorgeous, splendid
Stabianus, -a, -um, Stabian
stabulum, -ī, n. [cf. stō, stand], stand-
    ing place, stable, stall
statim, adv. [cf. stō, stand], on the
    spot, at once, instantly
statua, -ae, f. [sistō, place, set],
    statue
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ōtus [status, station],
    decide, determine
stillus, -ī, m. iron pencil, style (p. 210)
stō, -āre, stēti, status, stand
strātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sternō,
    spread], paved (of streets)
strepitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, make a
    noise], noise, din
stringō, -ere, strinxi, strictus, bind
    tight; draw, unsheathe
studeō, -ère, -uī, ——, give attention
to, be eager, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
studium, studi, n. [cf. studeō, be eager
    for], eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion
stultus, -a, -um, adj. foolish, stupid
Stymphālīs, -idis, adj. f. Stymphalian,
    of Stymphalus, a lake in southern
    Greece
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, be over,
    survive, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
superus

superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, supræmus or summus, above, upper (§ 312)

supplicium, suppli'cï, n. [supplex, kneeling in entreaty], punishment, torture. supplicium sùmere dê, inflict punishment on. supplicium dare, suffer punishment

surgō, -ere, sùr'rexï, — [sub, from below, + regō, straighten], rise

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [sub, under, + capiō, take], undertake, assume, begin

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, suspect, surmise, suppose

sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub, under, + teneō, hold], hold up, bear, sustain, withstand

suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron., his, her, hers, its, their, theirs (§ 98)

T

T., abbreviation of Titus

taberna, -ae, f. shop, stall

tabula, -ae, f. tablet for writing

tālis, -e, adj. such. tālis ... quālis, such ... as

tām, adv. so, such. Cf. ita, sic

tamen, adv. yet, however, nevertheless

tandem, adv. at length, finally

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch

tantum, adv. [tantus], only

tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great, such. tantus ... quantus, as large as

tardus, -a, -um, adj. slow, late; lazy

Tarpeia, -ae, f. Tarpeia (pronounced Tarpē'ya), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines

Tarquinius, Tarqu'i'ni, Tarquin, a Roman king. With the surname Superbus, Tarquin the Proud

timeō

Tarracīna, -ae, f. Tarrac'īna, a town in Latium. See map

taurus, -i, m. bull

tēctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of tegō, cover], covered, protected

tēlum, -ī, n. weapon

temerē, adv. rashly, heedlessly

tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus, time], storm, tempest

templum, -ī, n. temple, shrine

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, test; make trial of, attempt

tempus, -oris, n. time (§ 464. 2. b). in reliquum tempus, for the future

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ——, hold, keep

tergum, -ī, n. back. a tergo, on the rear. tergum vertere, retreat, flee

ternī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. three each, by threes (§ 334)

terra, -ae, f. earth, ground, land. orbis terrārum, the whole world

terror, -ōris, m. [cf. terreō, frighten], dread, alarm, terror

tertius, -a, -um, numeral adj. third

Teutōnēs, -um, m. the Teutons

theātrum, -ī, n. theater

Thēbæ, -ārum, f. Thebes, a city of Greece

Thēbānī, -ōrum, m. Thebans, the people of Thebes

thermae, -ārum, f. plur. baths

Thessalia, -ae, f. Thessaly, a district of northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, f. Thrace, a district north of Greece

Tiberius, Tībē'ri, m. Tiberius, a Roman first name

tībicen, -inis, m. [cf. tībia, pipe], piper, flute player

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ———, fear; be afraid of. Cf. vereor
timor

timor, -ôris, m. [cf. timô, fear], fear; dread, alarm. Cf. metus
Tîryns, Tîrynthês, f. Tîrînys, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus
toga, -ae, f. [cf. tegô, cover], toga
tormentum, -î, n. engine of war
totiêns, adv. so often, so many times
tôtus, -a, -um (gen. -îus, dat. -î), adj. all, the whole, entire (§ 108)
trâ-dô, -ere, -didi, -ditus [trans, across, + dô, deliver], give up, hand over; surrender, betray
trâ-dûcô, -ere, -dûxi, -ductus [trans, across, + dûcô, lead], lead across
trahô, -ere, trâxî, tractus, draw, pull, drag. multum trahere, protract, prolong much
trâ-iciô, -ere, -iêci, -iectus [trans, across, + iaciô, hurl], throw across; transfix
trâ-nô, -ère, -âvi, -âtus [trans, across, + nô, swim], swim across
transitus, —— (acc. -um, abl. -û), m. [cf. transeô, cross over], passage across
trans-eô, -ire, -îi, -itus [trans, across, + eô, go], go across, cross (§ 413)
trans-figô, -ere, -fixi, -fixus [trans, through, + figô, drive], transfix
transsitûs, —— (acc. -um, abl. -û), m. [cf. transeô, cross over], passage across
très, tria, numeral adj. three (§ 479)
triduum, tridiûm, n. [tres, three, + diès, days], three days' time, three days
trigintâ, indecl. numeral adj. thirty
triplex, -icis, adj. threefold, triple
trístis, -e, adj. sad; severe, terrible
tristitia, -ae, f. [trístis, sad], sadness, sorrow
triumphô, -âre, -âvi, -âtus [triumphus, triumph], celebrate a triumph

usus

triumphus, -î, m. triumphal procession, triumph. triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph
trucidô, -ëre, -âvi, -âtus, cut to pieces, slaughter. Cf. interficiô, necô, occidô
tû, tui (plur. vûs), pers. pron. thou, you (§ 480)
tuba, -ae, f. trumpet
Tullia, -ae, f. Tullia, a Roman name
tum, adv. then, at that time
turris, -is, f. tower (§ 465. 2)
tûtus, -a, -um, adj. safe
tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. your, yours (§ 98)

U

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. where, when
ullus, -a, -um (gen. -îus, dat. -î), adj. any (§ 108)
ulterior, -îus, -ôris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. ultimus, farther, more remote (§ 315)
ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see ulterior), farthest (§ 315)
umbra, -ae, f. shade
umerus, -î, m. shoulder
umquam, adv. ever, at any time
ûnû, adv. [ûnus, one], in the same place, at the same time
undecimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [ûnus, one, + decimus, tenth], eleventh
undique, adv. from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere
ûnus, -a, -um (gen. -îus, dat. -î), numeral adj. one; alone (§ 108)
urbs, -is, f. city (§ 465. a)
urgeô, -ëre, ursi, ——, press upon, crowd, hem in
ûrus, -î, m. wild ox, ursus
ûsque, adv. all the way, even
ûsus, -ûs, m. use, advantage
ut

ut, conj. with the subjv. that, in order that, that not (with verbs of fearing), so that, to (§ 350. 1)

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), interrog. pron. which of two? which? (§ 108)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. each of two, each, both. ab utraque parte, on both sides

utilis, -e, adj. [utor, use], useful
utraque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on either hand

úva, -ae, f. grape, bunch of grapes

taxor, -óris, f. wife

via

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx, swifī], swiftness

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. swifī, fleet

vēlum, -i, n. sail

vēndō, -ere, vēndīdī, vēndītus, sell

venīō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come, go

ventus, -i, m. wind

verbum, -i, n. word. verba facere prō, speak in behalf of

vereor, -ēri, -itus sum, dep. verb, fear; reverence, respect (§ 493). Cf. timeō

Vergilius, Vergilī, m. Vergil, the poet

vergō, -ere, ——, ——, turn, lie

vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, surely; conj. but, however. tum vērō, then you may be sure, introducing the climax of a story

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turu, change.

tergum vertere, retreat, flee

vērūs, -a, -um, true, actual

vesper, -erī, m. evening

vester, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. your, yours (§ 98)

vestigium, vestīgī, n. [cf. vestīgō, track], footprint, track, trace

vestimentum, -i, n. [vestis, clothing], garment

vestīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [vestis, clothing], clothe, dress

vestis, -is, f. clothing, attire, garment, robe

vestītus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of vestīō, clothe], clothed

Vesuvius, Vesu’vī, m. Vesuvius, the volcano near Pompeii. See map

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. old, veteran

vētō, -āre, -uī, -itus, forbid, prohibit

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trouble, annoy

via, -ae, f. way, road, street; way, manner. Cf. iter

Vāgīna, -ae, sheath, scabbard

vagō, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, wander

valēō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be powerful, be well; in the imperative as a greeting, farewell. plurimum valēre, have the most power

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō, be well], health

'validus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. valeō, be strong], strong, able, well'

vallis, -is, f. valley

vāllum, -i, n. rampart, earthworks

variōs, -a, -um, adj. bright-colored

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vāstus, empty], (make empty), devastate, lay waste

vectigal, -ālis, n. tax, tribute

vehementer, adv. [vehemens, eager], compared vehementius, vehementissimē, eagerly, vehemently

vehō, -ere, vexē, vectus, convey, carry.

In the passive often in the sense of ride, sail

vel, conj. or. vel...vel, either...or.

Cf. aut
viātor, -ōris, m. [via], traveler
victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor. In apposition, with adj. force, victorious
victūria, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory
vīcus, -i, m. village
vīdēō, -ère, vīdī, vīsus, sec. perceive.
   Pass. be seen; seem (§ 420. d)
vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], watch. dē tertīa vigilia, about the third watch
vigintī, indecl. numeral adj. twenty
vīlicus, -i, m. [vīla, farm], steward, Overseer of a farm
vīlla, -ae, f. farm, villa
vincō, -ère, vīnex, vincītus, bind, tie, fetter
vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, conquer, defeat, overcome. Cf. subīgō, superō
vīnea, -ae, f. shed (p. 219)
vīnum, -i, n. wine
violenter, adv. [violentus, violent], compared violentus, violentissimē, violently, furiously
vir, virī, m. man, husband; hero (§ 462. c)
vīrilis, -e, adj. [vir, man], manly
virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness; courage, valor; virtue (§ 464. 1)
vīs, (vis), f. strength, power, might, violence (§ 468)
vīta, -ae, f. [vivō, live], life. Vitam agere, spend or pass life
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, shun, avoid
vīvō, -ere, vīxi, ——, live. Cf. habitō, incolō
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living
vīx, adv. scarcely, hardly
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, summon, invite. Cf. appellō, nóminiō
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fly
volō, velle, voluī, ——, irreg. verb, will, be willing, wish (§ 497). Cf. cupō
volumen, -inis, n. roll, book
Vorēnus, -i, m. Vorēnus, a centurion
vōs, pers. pron. you (see tū) (§ 480
vōtum, -i, n. [neut. part. of voveō, vōvō, vōvō, pledge, prayer
vōx, vocis, f. [cf. vocō, call], voice, cry; word
vulnērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vulnus, wound], wound, hurt
vulnus, -eris, n. wound, injury
vulpēs, -is, f. fox
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A

a, an, commonly not translated
able (be), possum, posse, potuī, ——
(S 495)
abode, domicilium, domiciliī, n.
about (adv.), circiter
about (prep.), dé, with abl.
about to, expressed by fut. act. part.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.
across, trāns, with acc.
active, ācer, ācīs, ācre
advance, prōgredior, 3
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, m.
advise, moneō, 2
after (conj.), postquam; often expressed by the perf. part.
after (prep.), post, with acc.
against, in, contrā, with acc.
aid, auxilium, auxilīi, n.
all, omnīs, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, soci, m.
amost, paene; ferē
alone, ānus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um(§ 108)
already, iam
also, quoque
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
among, apud, with acc.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um
and, et; atque (ac); -que
and so, itaque
Andromeda, Andromeda, -ae, f.
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -ālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, 1
annoying, molestus, -a, -um
another, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)
any, āllus, -a, -um (§ 108)
any one, anything, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (§ 486)
appearance, fōrma, -ae, f.
appoint, creō, 1
approach, adpropinquō, 1, with dat.
are, used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula, sum (§ 494)
arise, orior, 4
arm, bracchium, bracciī, n.
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
around, circum, with acc.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrows, sagitta, -ae, f.
art of war, rēs miliaris
as possible, expressed by quam and superl.
ask, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
assail, oppugnō, 1
at, in, with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition (§ 268); time when, abl.
at once, statim
at the beginning of summer, initā aëstātē
Athens, Athēnēae, -ārum, f.
attack, impetus, -ūs, m.
attempt, cōnor, i; temptō, i
away from, ā or ab, with abl.

B
bad, malus, -a, -um
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
bank, ripa, -ae, f.
barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, m. plur.
battle, proelium, proeli, n.; pugna, -ae, f.
be, sum (§ 494)
be absent, be far, absūm (§ 494)
be afraid, timeō, 2; vereor, 2
be away, absūm (§ 494)
be in command of, præsum, with dat.
(§§ 494, 426)
be informed, certior fiō
be off, be distant, absūm (§ 494)
be without, egeō, with abl. (§ 180)
beast (wild), fera, -ae, f.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
because, quia; quod
because of, propter, with acc.; or abl.
of cause
before, heretofore (adv.), anteā
before (prep.), ante, with acc.; prō, with abl.
begin, incipiō, 3
believe, crēdō, 3, with dat. (§ 153)
belong to, predicate genitive (§ 409)
best, optimus, superl. of bonus
betray, trādō, 3
better, melior, comp. of bonus
between, inter, with acc.
billow, fluctus, -ūs, m.
bird, avis, -is, f. (§ 243. i)
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.
carry
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audāx, -acis; fortis, -e
boldly, audācter; fortiter
boldness, audācia, -ae, f.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
both, each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, -erī, m.
brave, fortis, -e
bravely, fortiter
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring back, reportō, i
bring upon, inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus, with acc. and dat. (§ 426)
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
building, aedīficium, aedīficī, n.
burn, cremō, i; incendō, 3
business, negōtium, negōtī, n.
but, however, autem, sed
by, ā, ab, with abl.; denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle
by night, noctū

C
Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
calamity, calamitās, -ātis, f.
call, vocō, i; appelō, i; nōminō, i
call together, convocō, i
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
can, could, possum, posse, potui,
—— (§ 495)
capture, capiō, 3; occupō, i
care, cūrā, -ae, f.
care for, cūrō, i
careful, attentus, -a, -um
carefulness, diligentia, -ae, f.
carry, ferō, ferre, tuli, latus (§ 498); portō, i
carry on
cart, carrus, -i, m.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, cessō, 1
Cepheus, Cēpheus, -i, m.
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (§ 485)
chicken, gallina, -ae, f.
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.
children, libēri, -ōrum, m. plur.
choose, dēligō, 3
choose, elect, creō, 1
citizen, civis, -is, m. and f. (§ 243. 1)
city, urbs, urbīs, f.
clear, clārus, -a, -um
cohort, cohors, -rtis, f.
come, veniō, 4
command, imperō, 1, with dat. (§ 45); iubeō, 2; praesum, with dat. (§ 426)
commit, committō, 3
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei pūbilicae
concerning, dē, with abl.
to conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3
construct (a ditch), perdūco, 3
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
contrary to, contrā, with acc.
Corinth, Corinthus, -i, f.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornēlii, m.
corset, lōrica, -ae, f.
cottage, casa, -ae, f.
country, as distinguished from the city, rūs, rūris, n.; as territory, finēs, -ium, m., plur. of finis
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
crime, scelus, -eris, n.
cross, trānsēō, 4 (§ 499)
crown, corōna, -ae, f.

Dwelling
day, diēs, -ēi, m.
daybreak, prīma lūx
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, f.
deed, rēs, rei, f.
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, calamitās, -ātis, f.
defend, defendō, 3
delay (noun), mora, -ae, f.
delay (verb), moror, 1
demand, postulō, 1
dense, dēnsus, -a, -um
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4; proficisciō, 3
dependent, cliēns, -entis, m.
design, cōnsilium, consilī, n.
desire, cupidō, 3
destroy, dēleō, 2
Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus (§ 498)
different, dissimilis, -e
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.
diligence, diligentia, -ae, f.
dinner, cēna, -ae, f.
disaster, calamitās, -ātis, f.
distant (be), absūm, -esse, āfūi, āfūtūrus (§ 494)
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
do, agō, 3; faciō, 3; when used as auxiliary, not translated
down from, dē, with abl.
drag, trahō, 3
drive, agō, 3
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vivō, 3
dwelling, aedificium, aedīficī, n.
### ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>each</strong></td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 484)</td>
<td>each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each other, inter with acc. of a reflexive</td>
<td>each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer, alacris, alacre</td>
<td>eager (be), studeō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easily, facile</td>
<td>eagerness, studium, studi, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy, facilis, -e</td>
<td>eagle, aquila, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>either ... or, aut ... aut</td>
<td>easily, facile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empire, imperium, imperii, n.</td>
<td>easy, facilis, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ, negōtium dō</td>
<td>either ... or, aut ... aut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage, hortor, 1</td>
<td>empire, imperium, imperii, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enemy, hostis, -is, m. and f.; inimicus, -i, m.</td>
<td>encourage, hortor, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough, satis</td>
<td>enemy, hostis, -is, m. and f.; inimicus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entire, totus, -a, -um (§ 108)</td>
<td>enough, satis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expectation, opīniō, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>entire, totus, -a, -um (§ 108)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye, oculus, -i, m.</td>
<td>expectation, opīniō, -ōnis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F</strong></td>
<td>eye, oculus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithless, perfidus, -a, -um</td>
<td>eye, oculus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous, clārus, -a, -um</td>
<td>faithless, perdidus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far, longē</td>
<td>famous, clārus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farmer, agricola, -ae, m.</td>
<td>far, longē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farther, ulterior, -ius</td>
<td>farmer, agricola, -ae, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father, pater, patris, m.</td>
<td>farther, ulterior, -ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatherland, patria, -ae, f.</td>
<td>father, pater, patris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, favēō, 2</td>
<td>fatherland, patria, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favorable, idōneus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um</td>
<td>favor, favēō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, metus, -ūs, m.; timor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>favorable, idōneus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, be afraid, timeō, 2</td>
<td>fear, metus, -ūs, m.; timor, -ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few, paucī, -ae, -a</td>
<td>fear, be afraid, timeō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field, ager, agrī, m.</td>
<td>few, paucī, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen, quīndecim</td>
<td>field, ager, agrī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1</td>
<td>fifteen, quīndecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>fight, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find, reperiō, 4</td>
<td>full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish, cōnficiō, 3</td>
<td>find, reperiō, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēre, ignis, -is, m. (§ 243.1)</td>
<td>finish, cōnficiō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firmness, cōnstantia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>ēre, ignis, -is, m. (§ 243.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first, prīmus, -a, -um</td>
<td>firmness, cōnstantia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee, fugīō, 3</td>
<td>first, prīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight, fuga, -ae, f.</td>
<td>flee, fugīō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly, volō, 1</td>
<td>flight, fuga, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foe, see enemy</td>
<td>fly, volō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>follow close after, subsequor, 3</td>
<td>foe, see enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food, cibus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>follow close after, subsequor, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot, pēs, pedis, m.</td>
<td>food, cibus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.</td>
<td>foot, pēs, pedis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for (conj.), enim, nam</td>
<td>foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for (prep.), sign of dat.; dē, prō, with abl.; to express purpose, ad, with gerundive; implied in acc. of time and of extent of space</td>
<td>for (prep.), sign of dat.; dē, prō, with abl.; to express purpose, ad, with gerundive; implied in acc. of time and of extent of space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for a long time, diū</td>
<td>for (prep.), sign of dat.; dē, prō, with abl.; to express purpose, ad, with gerundive; implied in acc. of time and of extent of space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid, vetō, 1</td>
<td>for a long time, diū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forces, cōpiae, -ārum, -ae, f., plur. of cōpia</td>
<td>forbid, vetō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest, silva, -ae, f.</td>
<td>forces, cōpiae, -ārum, -ae, f., plur. of cōpia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort, castellum, -ī, n.; castrum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>forest, silva, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortification, mūniōt, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>fort, castellum, -ī, n.; castrum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortify, mūniō, 4</td>
<td>fortification, mūniōt, -ōnis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>fortify, mūniō, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourth, quārtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, liber, -era, -erum</td>
<td>fourth, quārtus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, liberate, liberō, 1</td>
<td>free, liberate, liberō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum</td>
<td>frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend, amīcus, -i, m.</td>
<td>friend, amīcus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly (adj.), amīcus, -a, -um</td>
<td>friend, amīcus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly (adv.), amīcē</td>
<td>friendly (adj.), amīcus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>friendly (adv.), amīcē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frighten, perterreō, 2</td>
<td>friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, a or ab, dē, ē, ex, with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.</td>
<td>frighten, perterreō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.</td>
<td>from, a or ab, dē, ē, ex, with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full, plēnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>from each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Galba

G

Galba, Galba, -ae, m.
garland, corōna, -ae, f.
garrison, praesidium, praesi'dī, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul (a), Gallus, -i, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, f.
gentle, lēnis, -e
German, Germānus, -a, -um
Germans (the), Germānī, -ōrum, m. plur.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
get (dinner), parō, 1
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus
give over, surrender, dēdō, 3; trādō, 3
give up, omissō, 3
go, eō, 4 (§ 499)
go forth, prōgredior, 3
god, deus, -i, m. (§ 468)
goddess, dea, -ae, f. (§ 67)
gold, aurum, -i, n.
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -i, n.
grain supply, rēs frūmentāriā
great, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um
greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
guard, praesidium, praesi'dī, n.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, f.
happy, laetus, -a, -um
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hasten, contendō, 3; mātūrō, 1; properō, 1
hateful, invēsus, -a, -um
haughty, superbus, -a, -um
have, habēō, 2

have no power, nihil possimum
he, is; hic; iste; ille; or not expressed
head, caput, -itis, n.
hear, audiō, 4
heart, animus, -i, m.
heavy, gravis, -e
Helvetii (the), Helvētī, -ōrum, m. plur.
hem in, contineō, 2
hen, gallina, -ae, f.
her, eius; huius; istius; illius; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
hide, abdō, 3
high, altus, -a, -um
highest, summus, -a, -um
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, sui. See self
hindrance, impedimentum, -i, n.
his, eius; huius; istius; illius; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
hither, citerior, -ius (§ 315)
hold, teneō, 2
home, domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468). at home, domī (§ 267)
hope (noun), spēs, spei, f.
hope (verb), spērō, 1
horse, equus, -i, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m. and f.
hostile, inimicus, -a, -um
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domicilium, domiciliō, n.; domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468)
hurl, iaciō, 3

I

I, ego (§ 280); or not expressed
if, si. if not, nisi
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum
immediately, statim
in (of place), in, with abl.; (of time or of specification) abl. without prep.
**ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in order that</th>
<th>love</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in order that, ut, with subjv.; in order that not, lest, nē, with subjv.</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in vain, frustrā</td>
<td>labor (noun), labor, -ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry, diligentia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>labor (verb), labōrō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflict injuries upon, iniūriās inferō</td>
<td>lack (noun), inōpia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with dat. (§ 426)</td>
<td>lack (verb), egeō, 2, with abl. (§ 180)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflict punishment on, supplicium sumō de</td>
<td>lady, domina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform someone, aliquem certīōrem fació</td>
<td>lake, lacus, -ūs, m. (§ 260.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury, noceō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)</td>
<td>land, terra, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury, iniūria, -ae, f.</td>
<td>language, lingua, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into, in, with acc.</td>
<td>large, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1</td>
<td>larger, maior, maius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite, vocō, 1</td>
<td>lately, nūper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula, sum (§ 494)</td>
<td>Latona, Lātōna, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>island, insula, -ae, f.</td>
<td>law, lēx, légis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it, is; hic; iste; ille; or not expressed</td>
<td>lay waste, vāstō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy, Italia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>lead, dūcō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its, eius; huīus; istīus; illius; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)</td>
<td>leader, dux, ducis, m. and f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itself, suī. See self</td>
<td>learn, know, cognōscō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>leave, depart from, discēdō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>join battle, proelium committō</td>
<td>leave behind, abandon, rclinquō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journey, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468)</td>
<td>left, sinister, -tra, -trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge (noun), iūdex, -icis, m.</td>
<td>legion, legiō, -onis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge (verb), iūdiciō, 1</td>
<td>legionaries, legiōnāriī, -ōrum, m. plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julia, Iūlia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>length, longitūdō, -inis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just now, nūper</td>
<td>lest, nē, with subjv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>letter (of the alphabet), littera, -ae, f.; (an epistle) litterae, -arum, f. plur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep, contineō, 2; prohibēō, 2; teneō, 2</td>
<td>lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep on doing something, expressed by the impf. indic.</td>
<td>light, lūx, lūcis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill, interficiō, 3; necō, 1; occīdō, 3</td>
<td>like (adj.), similis, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king, rēx, rēgis, m.</td>
<td>like, love, amō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>line of battle, acīēs, acīēī, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, cognōscō, 3; in perf.; sciō, 4</td>
<td>little, parvus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>live, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vivō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>long, longus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long, for a long time, diū</td>
<td>long for, dēsiderō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after, currō, 1</td>
<td>love, amō, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
maid

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, f.
make, facio, 3
make war upon, bellum inferō with dat. (§ 426)
man, homō, -inis, m. and f.; vir, virī, m.
man-of-war, nāvis longa
many, multi, -ae, -a, plur. of multus
march, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468)
Mark, Marcus, -i, m.
mariage, mātrimōnium, mātrīmō'ni, n.
master, dominus, -i, m.; magister, -trī, m.
matter, negōtium, negō'ti, n.; rēs, rēi, f.
means, by means of, the abl.
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m.
midnight, media nox
mile, mille passuum (§ 331. b)
miles, milia passuum
mind, animus, -i, m.; mēns, mentis, f.
mine, meus, -a, -um
mistress, domina, -ae, f.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
monster, mōstrum, -i, n.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
more (adj.), plūs, plūris (§ 313); or a comparative. Adverb, magis
most (adj.), plūrimus, -a, -um; superl. degree. Adverb, maximē; plūrimum
mother, māter, mātrīs, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, 2
moved, commōitus, -a, -um
much (by), multō
multitude, multītūdō, -inis, f.
my, meus, -a, -um
myself, mē, reflexive. See self

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
near, propinquus, -a, -um
nearest, proximus, -a, -um
nearly, ferē
neighbor, finitimus, -i, m.
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
neither, neque or nec; neither . . . nor,
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)
ever, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next day, posttrīdē eius diēi
next to, proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, f.
nine, novem
no, minimē; or repeat verb with a negative (§ 210)
no, none, nūllus, -a, -um (§ 109)
no one, nēmō, nūllus
nor, neque or nec
not, nōn
not even, nē . . . quidem
not only . . . but also, nōn sōlum
. . . sed etiam
nothing, nihil or nihilum, -i, n.
now, nunc
number, numerus, -i, m.

obey, pāreō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)
of, sign of gen.; dē, with abl.; out of, ē or ex, with abl.
often, saepe
on (of place), in, with abl.; (of time) abl. without prep.
on account of, propert, with acc.; or abl. of cause
on all sides, undique
once (upon a time), ōlim
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

one

one, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 108)
one . . . another, alius . . . alius
(§ 110)
only (adv.), sōlum; tantum
opportunite, opportūnus, -a, -um
opposite, adversus, -a, -um
oracle, orāculum, -i, n.
orator, orātor, -ōris, m.
order, imperō, 1; iūbeō, 2
ornament, ornāmentum, -i, n.
other, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)
others (the), reliqui, -ōrum, m. plur.
ought, dēbeō, 2
our, noster, -tra, -trum
ourselves, nōs, as reflexive object. See
self
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3
own (his, her, its, their), suus, -a, -um

P

part, pars, partis, f.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
Perseus, Perseus, -i, m.
persuade, persuādeo, 2, with dat.
(§ 153)
pitch camp, castra pōnō
place (noun), locus, -i, m.
place, arrange, conlocō, 1
place, put, pōnō, 3
place in command, praeficiō, 3, with
acc. and dat. (§ 426)
plan (a), cōnsilium, cōnsīliī, n.
please, placēō, 2, with dat. (§ 154)
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
plow, arō, 1
Pompeii, Pompēii, -ōrum, m. plur.
possible (as), expressed by quam and
superl.
powerful (he), valeō, 2
praise, laudō, 1

rest

prefer, mālō, māllec, māluī,—(§ 497)
prepare for, parō, 1, with acc.
press hard, premō, 3
protection, fidēs, fideī, f.
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
public, pūlicus, -a, -um
Pūlius, Pūlius, Pūli, m.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.; suppli-
cium, suppli'cī, n.
purpose, for the purpose of, ut, quī,
or quō, with subj.; ad, with ger-
und or gerundive; causā, following
the genitive of a gerund or gerundive
pursue, inseguor, 3

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter
quite, expressed by the comp. degree

R

rampart, vāllum, -i, n.
rear, novissimum agmen
reason, causa, -ae, f.
receive, accipō, 3; excipiō, 3
recent, recēns, -entis
recently, nūper
redoubt, castellum, -i, n.
refuse, recūsō, 1
remain, maneō, 2
remaining, reliquis, -a, -um
reply, respondēō, 2
report (noun), fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor,
-ōris, m.
report (verb), adferō; dēferō; referō
(§ 498)
republic, rēs pūblica
require, postulō, 1
resist, resistō, 3, with dat. (§ 154)
rest (the), reliqui, -ōrum, m. plur.
restrain

restrain, contineō, 2
retainer, cliēns, -entis, m.
retreat, pedem referō; terga vertō
return, redeō, 4; reverter, 3
revolution, rēs novae
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flūmen, -inis, n.; flūvius, fluvī, m.
road, via, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
row, ārdō, -inis, m.
rule, regō, 3
rumor, fāma, -ae, f.; rōmor, -ōris, m.
run, currō, 3

S

sacrifice, sacrum, -ī, n.
safety, salūs, -ītis, f.
sail, nāvīgō, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the sake of, causā, following a gen.
same, īdem, eadem, idem (§ 287)
savages, barbari, -ōrum, m. plur.
save, servō, 1
say, dico, 3
school, lūdus, -i, m.; schola, -ae, f.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
second, secundus, -a, -um
see, videō, 2
seek, petō, 3
seem, videor, 2, passive of videō
seize, occupō, 1; rapiō, 3
self, ipse, -a, -um (§ 286); sui (§ 281)
send, mittō, 3
set fire to, incendō, 3
set out, proficiscor, 3
seven, septem
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, m.

stand

she, ea; haec; ista; illa (§ 115); or not expressed
ship, nāvis, -is, f. (§ 243. 1)
short, brevis, -e
shout, clamōr, -ōris, m.
show, dēmōnstrō, 1
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
side, latus, -eris, n.
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, f.
since, cum, with subjv. (§ 396); the abl. abs. (§ 381)
sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
sit, sedēō, 2
size, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
skilled, peritus, -a, -um
slave, servus, -ī, m.
slavery, serviūs, -ūtis, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
small, parvus, -a, -um
snatch, rapiō, 3
so, ita; sic; tam
so great, tantus, -a, -um
so that, ut; so that not, ut nōn
soldier, mēles, -itis, m.
some, often not expressed; quis (quī), qua (quaec), quid (quod); aliquī, ali-qua, aliquest
some one, quis; aliquis (§ 487)
some . . . others, ali . . . alī (§ 110)
something, quid; aliquest (§ 487)
son, filius, fili, m.
soon, mox
space, spatium, spatī, n.
spear, pilum, -ī, n.
spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer, alacris, alacere
spring, fōns, fontis, m.
spur, calcar, -āris, n.
stand, stō, 1
state

state, civitās, -ātis, f.
station, conlocō, i
steadiness, const āntia, -ae, f.
stone, lapis, -idis, m.
storm, oppugnō, i
story, fābula, -ae, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strength, viōns, (vis), f.
strong, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um
sturdy, validus, -a, -um
such, tālis, -e
suddenly, subitō
suffer punishment, supplicium dō
sufficiently, satis
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.

supplies, commētus, -ūs, m.
surrender, trādō, 3
suspect, suspicor, i
swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis
sword, gladius, gladī, m.

T

take, capture, capiō, 3
take part in, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, with dat. (§ 426)
take possession of, occupō, i
tall, altus, -a, -um
task, opus, operis, n.
teach, docēō, 2
teacher, magister, -trī, m.
tear (noun), lacrima, -ae, f.
tell, dīcō, 3; narrō, i
ten, decem
terrified, perterrētus, -a, -um
terrify, perterreō, 2
than, quam
that (conj. after verbs of saying and the like), not expressed
that (pron.), is; iste; ille

there, as expletive, not expressed
there, in that place, ibi
therefore, itaque
they, iī; hī; istī; illī; or not expressed
think, arbitror, 1; existimō, 1; putō, 1
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
though, cum, with subjv. (§ 396)
thousand, mille (§ 479)
three, tres, tria (§ 479)
through, per, with acc.
thy, tuus, -a, -um

time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, sign of dat.; ad, in, with acc.; expressing purpose, ut, qui, with subjv.; ad, with gerund or gerundive
to each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
to-day, hodiē
tooth, dēns, dentis, m.
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -is, f. (§ 243. 2)
town, oppidum, -i, n.
townsman, oppidānus, -i, m.
trace, vestigium, vestīgium, vestīgiā, n.
trade, mercātor, -orīs, m.
train, exercēō, 2

tree

that, in order that, in purpose clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing; nē (§§ 349, 366, 372)
that not, lest, in purpose clauses, nē; after verbs of fearing; ut (§§ 349, 366, 372)

the, not expressed
their, gen. plur. of is; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
their own, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
then, at that time, tum
then, in the next place, deinde, tum

thousand, mille (§ 479)
three, tres, tria (§ 479)
through, per, with acc.
thy, tuus, -a, -um

time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, sign of dat.; ad, in, with acc.; expressing purpose, ut, qui, with subjv.; ad, with gerund or gerundive
to each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
to-day, hodiē
tooth, dēns, dentis, m.
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -is, f. (§ 243. 2)
town, oppidum, -i, n.
townsman, oppidānus, -i, m.
trace, vestigium, vestīgium, vestīgiā, n.
trade, mercātor, -orīs, m.
train, exercēō, 2

tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tribe
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
troops, cōpiac, -ārum, f. plur.
true, vērus, -a, -um
trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.
try, cōnor, i; temptō, i
twelve, duodecim
two, duo, duae, duo (§ 479)

U
under, sub, with acc. or abl.
undertake, suscipió, 3
unharmed, incolūmis, -e
unless, nisi
unlike, dissimilis, -e
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (§ 497)
up to, sub, with acc.
us, nōs, acc. plur. of ego

V
very, superl. degree; maximē; ipse, -a, -um (§ 285)
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vicus, -i, m.
violece, vīs, (vīs), f.
violece, vēhementer
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

W
wage, gerō, 3
wagon, carrus, -i, m.
wall, mūrus, -i, m.
want, inopia, -ae, f.
war, bellum, -i, n.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, ae, f.
wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.
way, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468); via, -ae, f.
way, manner, modus, -i, m.
we, nōs, plur. of ego; or not expressed
woman
weak, ūnsirmus, -a, -um
weapons, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.; tēla, -ōrum, n. plur.
wear, gerō, 3
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um
what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (§ 483)
when, ubi; cum (§ 396); often expressed by a participle
where, ubi
which, quī, quae, quod (§ 482); which of two, uter, utra, utrum (§ 108)
while, expressed by a participle
whither, quō
who (rel.), quī, quae (§ 482); (interrog.) quis (§ 483)
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
whose, cuius; quōrum, quārum, quōrum, gen. of qui, quae, quod, rel.; or of quis, quid, interrog.
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wide, lātus, -a, -um
width, latitūdō, -inis, f.
 wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
willing (be), volō, velle, volūi, — (§ 497)
win (a victory), reportō, i
wind, ventus, -i, m.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wing, cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, -emis, f.
wisdom, cōnsilium, consiţī, n.
wish, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, volūi, — (§ 497); wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (§ 497)
with, cum, with abl.; sometimes abl.
alone
withdraw, sē recipere
without, sine, with abl.
woman, fēmina, -ae, f.; mulier, -eris, f.
wonderful

wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um
word, verbum, 4, n.
work, labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.
worse, peior, peius, comp. of malus
worst, pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of malus
wound (noun), vulnus, -eris, n.
wound (verb), vulnerō, 1
wreath, corōna, -ae, f.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum
wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.

zeal

year, annus, -ī, m.
yes, certē; ita; vērō; or, more usually, repeat the verb (§ 210)
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud
you, sing. tū; plur. vōs (§ 480); or not expressed
your, sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur. vester,
-tra, -trum (§ 98. b)

Z

zeal, studium, studī, n.
INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

ā-declension of nouns, 57, 461
ā-verbs, conjugation of, 488
ablative case, 48, 50
  absolute, 381
  after a comparative, 309
  of accompaniment, 104
  of agent, 181
  of cause, 102
  of description, 444, 445
  of manner, 105
  of means or instrument, 103
  of measure of difference, 317
  of place from which, 179
  of place where, 265
  of separation, 180
  of specification, 398
  of time, 275
accent, 14-16
accompaniment, abl. of, 104
accusative case, 33
  as subject of the infinitive, 214
  object, 37
  of duration and extent, 336
  of place to which, 263; 266
predicate, 392
  with prepositions, 340
adjectives, 54, 55
  agreement, 65
  comparison, regular, 301; by adverbs, 302; irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315
decision of comparatives, 303
  of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469
  of third declension, 250-257, 471
  with the dative, 143
adverbs, 319
  comparison, 320, 323

formation, regular, 320, 321; irregular, 322, 323
agent, expressed by the abl. with ā or ab, 181
agreement
  of adjectives, 65, 215, a
  of appositives, 81
  of predicate nouns, 76
  of relative pronouns, 224
  of verbs, 28
aliquis, 487
alius, 108, 110, 470
alphabet, 1-3
alter, 108, 110
antepenult, 9.3; accent of, 15
apposition, 80, 81
article, not used in Latin, 22, a
base, 58
cardinal numerals, 327-329, 478
case, 32, 2
causal clauses with cum, 395, 396
dcause, expressed by the abl., 102
characteristic, subjv. of, 389, 390
comparative, declension of, 303
comparison
  abl. of, 309
degrees of, 300
  of adjectives, 300-315; irregular, 311-315, 473, 475
dadverbs, regular, 320, 476; irregular, 323, 477
  positive wanting, 315
six adjectives in -lis, 307
complementary infinitive, 215
compound verbs, with the dative, 425, 426

344
INDEX

concessive clauses with cum, 395:
    396
conjugation stems, 184
conjugations, the four regular, 126.
    488-491; irregular, 494-500
consonants, 2
copula, 21
cum, conjunction, 395
cum, preposition, 209

dative case, 43
    of indirect object, 44, 45
    of purpose, or end for which, 437
    with adjectives, 143
    with compound verbs, 426
    with special verbs, 153
dea, declension of, 57
declension, 23, 32
degree of difference, expressed by the
    abl., 317
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns,
    112-115, 290-292, 481
deponent verbs, 338, 339, 493
descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-
    445
descriptive relative clause, with the
    subj., 389, 390
deus, declension of, 468
difference, measure of, 316, 317
diphthongs, 6
direct statements, 414
distributive numerals, 327-3, 334
domi, locative, 267
domus, declension of, 468
duo, declension of, 479
duration of time, expressed by the
    acc., 336

dé-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467
dé-verbs, conjugation of, 489
dé-verbs, conjugation of, 490
dego, declension of, 280, 480
enditics, 16
eó, conjugation of, 499
extent of space, expressed by the acc.,
    336
fearing, subj. after verbs of, 370-
    372
feró, conjugation of, 498
fifth or é-declension, 272, 273, 467
filia, declension of, 67
filius, declension of, 87-89
finite verb, defined, 173
fíó, conjugation of, 500
first conjugation, 488
first or á-declension, 57, 461
fourth conjugation, 491
fourth or u-declension, 259, 260, 466
from, how expressed, 178-181
future participle, formation of, 374. c
future perfect, formation of, active,
    187. 3; passive, 202
future tense, formation of, 137, 156
gender
    in English and in Latin, 60
    in the first declension, 61
    in the second declension, 72
    in the third declension, 247
    in the fourth declension, 260
    in the fifth declension, 272
general observations on declension, 74
genitive case
    English equivalents of, 33
    of description, 443, 445
    of nouns in -itus and -ium, 87
    partitive, 331
    possessive, 38, 409
gerund, a verbal noun, 402, 403
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 404;
    with ad to express purpose, 407

hic, declension and use of, 290, 291
how to read Latin, 17

i, consonant, 3
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244
i-verbs, conjugation of, 491
idem, declension of, 287, 481
íens, declension of, 472
ille, declension and use of, 290-293
    481
imperative, formation of, 161, 175; irregular, 161.2; in commands, 161
imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134, 165.1
imperfect subjunctive, 354
indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 296, 297, 484–487
independent clauses, 219
indirect object, 44, 45
indirect questions, 430–432
indirect statements, 414–419
infinitive
as object, 213
as subject, 216
complementary, 215
definition of, 173
does not express purpose, 352
formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206
in indirect statements, 415–419
used as in English, 213–216
inflection, defined, 23
instrument, abl. of, 100.b, 103
intensive pronoun, ipse, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481
interrogative pronouns and adjectives,
225–227, 483
intransitive verbs, defined, 20.a; with the dative, 153
is-verbs of the third conj., 492
ipse, declension and use of, 285, 481
irregular adjectives, 108
irregular comparison of adjectives, 307, 311, 312; of adverbs, 323
irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468
irregular verbs, 494–500
is, declension and use of, 113–116
iste, declension and use of, 290, 292, 481
iter, declension of, 468

Latin word order, 68
locative case, 267

magis and maximè, comparison by, 302
màlò, conjugation of, 497
manner, abl. of, 105

means, abl. of, 103
measure of difference, abl. of, 316, 317
mille, declension of, 479; construction with, 331.a, b
moods, defined, 121

-ne, enclitic, in questions, 210
né, conj., that not, lest, with negative clauses of purpose, 350.11; with verbs of fearing, 370
nine irregular adjectives, 108–110
nòlì, conjugation of, 497
nominative case, 35, 36
nonne, in questions, 210
nòs, declension of, 280, 480
nouns, 19.2
first declension, 57, 461
second declension, 71–74, 87–92, 462
third declension, 230–247, 403–465
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467
num, in questions, 210
number, 24
numerals, 327–334, 478, 479

o-declension of nouns, 71–74, 87–92, 462
object, 20; direct, 37; indirect, 44, 45
order of words, 68
ordinal numerals, 327.2, 478

participial stem, 201.2
participles, defined, 203
agreement of, 204
formation of present, 374.b; of perfect, 201; of future, 374.c, d
of deponent verbs, 375
tenses of, 376
translated by a clause, 377
partitive genitive, 330, 331
passive voice, defined, 163; formation of, 164, 202
penult, 9.3; accent of, 15
perfect indicative
formation, in the active, 185, 186; in the passive, 202
meaning of, 190
definite, 190
definite, 190
distinguished from the imperfect, 190
perfect infinitive, active, 195; passive, 205
perfect passive participle, 201
perfect stem, 185
perfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 362
person, 122
personal endings, active, 122; passive, 164
personal pronouns, 280, 480
place, where, whither, whence, 263–265; names of towns and domus and rūs, 266–268
pluperfect indicative, active, 187.2; passive, 202
pluperfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 363
plus, declension of, 313
possessive pronouns, 97, 98
possessum, conjugation of, 495
predicate, defined, 19
predicate adjective, defined, 55
predicate noun, 75, 76
prepositions, with the abl., 209; with the acc., 340
present indicative, 128, 130, 147
present stem, 126. a
present subjunctive, 344
primary tenses, 356
principal parts, 183
pronouns
classification of, 278
defined, 19. 2. a
demonstrative, 481
indefinite, 297, 484–487
intensive, 285, 286, 481
interrogative, 483
personal, 480
possessive, 97, 98
reflexive, 281
relative, 220, 221
pronunciation, 4–7
prosum, conjugation of, 496
purpose
ative of, 436, 437
expressed by the gerund or gerundive with ad, 407
not expressed by the infinitive, 352
subjunctive of, 348–350, 365–367
quality, gen. or abl. of, 441–445
quam, with a comparative, 308
quantity, 11–13
questions, direct, 210; indirect, 430–432
qui, declension and use of, 220, 221, 482
quidam, declension of, 485
quis, declension and use of, 225–227, 483
quisquam, declension of, 486
quisque, declension of, 484
reflexive pronouns, 281
relative clauses of characteristic or description, 389, 390
relative clauses of purpose, 348, 349
relative pronouns, 220, 221
result clauses, 384–387
reviews, 502–528
rūs, constructions of, 266
se, distinguished from ipse, 285. a
second conjugation, 489
second or o-declension, 71–93, 462
sentences, simple, complex, compound, 219
separation, abl. of, 180
separative ablative, 178–181
sequence of tenses, 356–351
space, extent of, expressed by the acc., 336
specification, abl. of, 398
stems, of nouns, 230; of verbs, 184
subject, defined, 19. 2; of the infinitive, 213, 214
subjunctive, formation
of the present, 344
INDEX

of the imperfect, 354
of the perfect, 361, 362
of the pluperfect, 361, 363

subjunctive constructions
characteristic or description, 389, 390
indirect questions, 430–432
purpose, 349, 366, 372
result, 385, 386
time, cause, or concession, with cum, 395, 396

subjunctive ideas, 346
subjunctive tenses, 342, 343
subordinate clauses, 219
sui, declension of, 281, 480
sum, conjugation of, 494
suus, use of, 98, 116
syllables, 8; division of, 9; quantity of, 13
syntax, rules of, 501

temporal clauses with cum, 395, 396
tense, defined, 120
tense signs
imperfect, 133
future, 137, 156
pluperfect active, 187, 2
future perfect active, 187, 3
tenses, primary and secondary, 356; sequence of, 357, 358
third conjugation, 490, 492
third declension of nouns
classes, 231, 463
consonant stems, 232–238, 464
gender, 247

i-stems, 241–244, 465
irregular nouns, 246
time, abl. of, 275
time, acc. of, 336
towns, rules for names of, 266, 267, 268
transitive verb, 20, a
très, declension of, 479
tū, declension of, 280, 480
tuus, compared with vester, 98, b

u-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466
ultima, 9, 3

verbs
agreement of, 28
conjugation of, 126, 488–491
deponent, 338, 339, 493
irregular, 494–500
personal endings of, 122, 164
principal parts of, 183
vester, compared with tuus, 98, b
vis, declension of, 468

vocabularies
English-Latin, pp. 332–343
Latin-English, pp. 299–331
special, pp. 283–298
vocative case, 56, a
of nouns in -ius of the second declension, 73, b
of proper nouns in -ius and of fitius, 88
voice, defined, 163
volō, conjugation of, 497
vōs, declension of, 280, 480
vowels, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 12